

- **THE SAN OR TWA OR BUSHMEN:**

- The San were the first people to arrive in South Africa around AD1000. Therefore, they are believed to have been the earliest inhabitants of South Africa.
- They are also known as the **Roa, Twa**, Hunters or Bushmen.
- They belonged to the Bushmanoid race or Khoisan family.
- They are believed to have been yellow or brownish in colour with short structure and a lot of hair on their bodies as well as a click sound in their language.
- The origin of the San is not clear to the historians. But they are believed to have originated from either **East** or **Central Africa**.
- It is believed that by AD 1000, the San were living on the **Mainland of Tanganyika**. It is from here that they moved Southwards, through Central Africa and finally settled in the different areas of South Africa.
- This is proved by similar rock and cave paintings found in East, Central and South Africa.
- They are believed to have started migrating around 2000 years. They were forced South wards by the Bantu speaking people who were strong and organised.
- Once in South Africa, they first settled in the lands of **Damaraland** and the Batlapin Plateau.
- Later, they spread to the provinces of Transkei, Cape, Natal, Orange Free State and Transvaal as well as Griqualand West.
- Some went into the Swazi and Lesotho highlands. Others settled in the mountains of Winterburg, Drakensberg, Brankenstein and Comdeboo.
- The San also settled along rivers like Vaal, Orange, Kei, Tugera, Fish, Keiskama and Umtata others.
- The arrival of more advanced groups like the Bantu and the Dutch pushed them into the deserts of Kalahari and Namib.
- Today, the survivors of the San live in the countries of Namibia, Botswana and Angola.
- **REASONS FOR THE MIGRATION OF THE SAN TO SOUTH AFRICA**
- The San migrated to South Africa due to various reasons;
- The outbreak of epidemic diseases such as sleeping sickness, malaria and small pox forced the San to migrate from their original home land to South Africa.
- The desire by the youths to be independent also helped them to look for other new areas where they would live independently.
- The outbreak of natural calamities such as earth quakes and drought forced them to migrate to South Africa.
- The occurrence of famine also forced the San to move to other areas in search of food.
- The nomadic way of life of the San influenced them to move. The San was used to moving from one place to another.
- Over population in their home land forced them to look for more land, hence migrating to South Africa.

- The love for adventure influenced them to migrate to South Africa as some of them wanted to see how other areas looked like.
- Internal conflicts or misunderstandings between the San also forced the San to look for new and peaceful areas.
- External pressure from the Bantu and other hostile tribes forced the San to migrate to South Africa.
- The desire for new fishing grounds forced the San to migrate to South Africa since fishermen.
- They were looking for wild game or animals because they were mainly hunters and food gatherers and the Bantu had cleared all the forests where they used to hunt from.
- Group influence or band wagon also influenced some of the San to migrate. They moved because they saw others moving especially their family members.
- **THE ORGANISATION OF THE SAN (WAY OF LIFE OF THE SAN)**
- **Describe the political, social, and social organization of the San up to the 17th Century.**
- **Political Organisation:**
- The San had a segementary or decentralized system of administration i.e. they had no Kings or a centralized authority and therefore they had a weak political set.
- Their leaders were not hereditary and at any occasion they would have a new head.
- In most cases, the work of the government was done at the level of each settlement with the help of the **headman**.
- The headman ruled according to the acceptable norms and traditions of the society.
- The San lived in numerous small isolated settlements or camps. The largest camp was between 200 and 500 people. Each settlement was practically independent from the other.
- The headman was assisted by **a council of elders** whose decisions he implemented without question. Therefore, the elders carried out decisions on behalf of the people.
- The headman also exercised full ritual powers in the society. For example, he presided over initiation ceremonies like marriage ceremonies.
- Council meetings were regularly held to handle important matters like disputes conflicts among the people.
- Membership to the council was open to all male adults who decided most of the political affairs of the society. Therefore, clan democracy existed among the San.
- At a higher political level, the San were divided into three large groups each comprising of a number of scattered tribes which in turn formed scattered settlements. These were the **Northern San**, the **Central San** and the **Southern San**.
- Each group was bound or united together by a common language which distinguished it from the rest.
- The San had neither a permanent army nor police for defence or security. Therefore, they no standing army but the youths provided security as need arose.
- The youths used simple weapons like arrows and bows for defence.

- The San were generally friendly and welcoming to other people unless provoked or attacked.
- Every group had a responsibility of protecting their land against intrusion or interference from other groups.
- Their women had no say in politics and were not respected in society.
- **Social organization**
- The family was the basic social unit where relatives lived together.
- The San had weak family ties and they never cared for the sick and old people.
- Members of the same group related through marriage.
- Polygamous marriages were highly encouraged among the San although monogamy also existed.
- Marrying many wives was for prestige and social harmony.
- The San encouraged early marriages and boys would marry at an early age of **14 - 15** years while girls of **7- 8** years would be married off.
- After marriage, the man (groom or son-in-law) would join the family of his bride (wife) hunting for them until the birth of their first child.
- By hunting and providing food for the in-laws, the boy was paying bride price.
- After having their first born, the couple would then be allowed to form their own home.
- The San women were so courageous and gave birth alone and cut the baby's umbilical cord with a sharp stick.
- The San women produced very few children i.e. three to four because of their hunting and wandering life.
- The San practiced **endogamous marriages** i.e. they married within the same clan.
- They were also good dancers and mostly danced at the appearance of the new or half as well as full moon and after a good hunt.
- Initiation ceremonies were very important and served cultural and adulthood roles. For example, boys were trained in skills of hunting for earning their living.
- The San trained the youths in the skills of how to use local herbs and medicines to treat certain diseases.
- They also celebrated important stages in life like death, marriage, birth and puberty. This was done by sprinkling the person with the blood of a sacrificed animal.
- They drank fermented juice and honey during their social ceremonies.
- The San lived in temporally shelters, caves and under shades of big trees.
- They had a strong love for art and were great painters who recorded major events of their life through pictures that decorated walls of their caves and rocks.
- The San never lived a permanent life but always moved from one place to another looking for hunting grounds and therefore they largely lived a nomadic life.
- Their language was characterized by a click sound i.e. spoke a Khoisan language.
- The San were also religious people and believed in life after death and a Supreme Being or god.
- They worshipped a Supreme Being or god called **Kaggen** or **Huwe** or **Hishe** or **Thora** who was believed to be the creator.

- On earth, Kaggen manifested himself through the praying mantis, thunder and lightening.
- Accordingly, prayers and sacrifices were offered to Him for blessings and rain especially during the dry season.
- They therefore treated the praying mantis with a lot of respect as a symbol of wealth and fortune.
- The praying mantis was thought to live in the sky with the souls of the dead men.
- The San had limited vocabulary and therefore their numerical knowledge stopped at three.
- They wore ornaments of Ostrich eggshells and feathers, animal skins as well as leaves.
- The elders were a source of knowledge, wisdom and truth among the San.
- Social affairs were also decided by the male elders.
- **Economic organization**
- Among the San, land was a communal property and therefore it was communally owned.
- Though peaceful, they jealously protected their hunting grounds against any intruders or invaders.
- Their life mainly depended on hunting. They hunted small and big animals like cheetahs, zebra, hyenas as well as birds like ostrich and vultures among others.
- Sometimes, the San would hunt for the Khoikhoi.
- They used poisonous arrows and bows to hunt down small animals like squirrels. The large animals were trapped in big pits.
- They were also good at tracking animals. They followed the tracks of a wounded animal until they found it.
- They neither grew crops nor cultivated. Therefore, they never carried out crop growing.
- They kept no animal except a domestic dog for hunting and defence.
- They gathered and collected wild roots, tubers, fruits like berries, water melons, oranges, mangoes, locusts, wild honey, white ants and caterpillars.
- They also carried out fishing as an activity in the various rivers like Tsomo, Kei, Vaal and Umzimvubu.
- There was division of labour among the San such that the men hunted while the women gathered food.
- The women used sharpened sticks to dig tubers and roots.
- The San had little material wealth and therefore they had a weak economy.
- They however, raided other communities for wealth and food.
- They also traded with their neighbours.
- The San had no idea about iron working but made tools out of stones and sticks.
- They also carried out pottery as an economic activity.
- **THE KHOIKHOI OR HERDERS OR HOTTENTOTS**
- **(THEIR ORIGIN AND MIGRATION)**
- These were the **second group** of people to occupy South Africa after the San.

- They are related to the San because both of them originated from East and Central Africa.
- Like the San, the Khoikhoi were yellow or brown skinned with a click sound in their language. However, they were slightly taller than the San.
- The Khoikhoi belonged to the Bushmanoid race or the Khoisan family.
- They are at times known as the **Hottentots**, a name given to them by the Europeans in South Africa.
- They are also known as the herders.
- They were pushed south wards by the Bantu who were more organized and strong.
- The Khoikhoi moved to South Africa in **four groups** i.e. the **Nama, the Gona, the Cochoqua** and the **Korana**.
- The **Nama** (*Western Khoikhoi*) moved **westwards** along the Orange River and settled in **Namibia**.
- The **Gona** (*Eastern Khoikhoi*) followed the eastern side into the **Fish River Valley**.
- The **Cochoqua** (*Cape Khoikhoi*) moved into the **coastal areas of the Cape**.
- The Korana went into the **Griqualand west**.
- By the 15th Century, the Khoikhoi were found living along the **Saldanha Bay, Table Bay, Vessel Bay** and **Mossel Bay**.
- However, their **Eastward expansion** and migration was checked by the Indian Ocean and the coming of the Europeans.
- Generally, the Khoikhoi settled in the land from the **Atlantic Coast** to the **Buffalo Coast** on the Indian Ocean.
- In conclusion, the origins of the Khoisan are **not clear to historians**.
- **REASONS FOR THE MIGRATION OF THE KHOIKHOI (HOTTENTOS)**
- The Khoikhoi migrated due to a number reasons which included the following;
- They were hunters and so they might have migrated in search of hunting grounds.
- They might have migrated to South Africa in search of pasture since they were pastoralists.
- The outbreak of both human and animal diseases forced the Khoikhoi to migrate.
- The presence of powerful hostile tribes which were more powerful than them like the Bantu tribes that forced the Khoikhoi to migrate.
- Internal conflicts might have forced some families to move in search for peace and settlement.
- The spirit of adventure might have forced them to move.
- Overpopulation also led to the migration of the Khoikhoi in order to look for areas of small population.
- **THE ORGANISATION OR WAY OF LIFE OF THE KHOIKHOI**
- Describe the way of life or organization of the Khoikhoi in the 16th Century.
- **ECONOMICALLY,**
- The Khoikhoi were pastoralists. They kept large herds of flat tailed sheep, goats and cattle. These animals formed the basis of the Khoikhoi wealth or economy.
- Only on **special or important occasions like marriage, birth and death** did the Khoikhoi **slaughter** their animals.

- Cattle was very important to the Khoikhoi and therefore served many purposes among the Khoikhoi. For example, it served as **food, milk, transport, prestige and wealth.**
- Among the Khoikhoi, men drank cow's milk while women drank Ewe's milk.
- The Khoikhoi were hunters and they hunted animals like antelopes. They hunted using arrows, bows for small animals and for the big animals they dug pits.
- The Khoikhoi carried out fishing in rivers like Vaal, Orange and the Fish River among others to support or supplement their diet.
- They also carried out food gathering like roots, fruits as well as insects like locusts, grass hoppers, white ants, butterflies, caterpillars and also collected honey.
- Among the Khoikhoi, work was divided according to sex i.e. the women gathered fruits while the men hunted and looked after animals.
- The Khoikhoi traded with their neighbours like the Bantu and later with the Europeans like the Dutch.
- They practiced iron working and pottery and this done after the coming of the Bantu.
- Among the Khoikhoi, land was communally owned i.e. no individual ownership of land was allowed.
- The Khoikhoi did not grow crops just like the San.
- **SOCIALLY,**
- The Khoikhoi were religious people who worshipped their God or Supreme Being called Tsuigoab who was believed to be the creator/the father of our fathers and the giver of wealth.
- On earth, Tsuigoab manifested himself through the **praying mantis, thunder and lightning.**
- Accordingly, prayers and **sacrifices** were offered to him for blessings and rain especially during the dry season.
- Therefore, like the San the Khoikhoi **treated the praying mantis** with a lot of **respect as a symbol of wealth and fortune.**
- Just like the San, the Khoikhoi danced at the appearance of the new, full and half moon.
- They used traditional herbs as medicines and also taught the youths how to use them.
- The family among the Khoikhoi formed the basic or smallest social unit and a group of family formed a lineage.
- Their languages were characterized by a lot of clicks.
- The Khoikhoi had a wider vocabulary unlike the San.
- They were nomadic in nature i.e. they never had permanent homes but they kept moving from one area to another.
- They lived in beehive shaped houses or dome shaped structures which were temporary.
- The Khoikhoi's huts were made of reeds and enclosed by a fence of thorny bushes.

- The Khoikhoi carried out initiation ceremonies characterized by circumcision. This increased social unity and responsibility. Other ceremonies included sacrificing for rain, marriage and death.
- The Khoikhoi carried out both polygamous and monogamous marriages. This was done after initiation.
- The practiced exogamous marriages i.e. they married outside their clans and therefore intermarriage between members of the same clan was not allowed.
- Polygamy was practiced but they produced few children to reduce.
- The Khoikhoi practiced early marriages and marriage was compulsory. For example, boys of 15 to 17 years would be married to girls of 12 to 14 years.
- The married couples stayed with parents of the girls until they produced their first born. Thereafter, gifts like sheep were given to the bride's parents before their return.
- After producing their first born, they were allowed to establish their own home and the bride went with her own animals which remained her property in the new home.
- **POLITICALLY,**
- The Khoikhoi were a decentralized society and therefore never had a centralized authority or leadership.
- The Khoikhoi were divided into three groups and each group with a number of settlements.
- The Khoikhoi lived in large political units or camps or settlements of about 600 – 2000 people. These camps consisted of people or related clans.
- Each camp had a chief who was helped by a council elders.
- The chief settled disputes between members of different clans.
- They held their political meetings in public and every member was free to attend such meeting.
- The Khoikhoi never had a permanent or standing army. However, the youths would be called up on to provide security.
- The Khoikhoi were peaceful and disciplined people but they became furious or annoyed if interfered with their hunting grounds.
- They always raided their neighbours like the Bantu for food and cattle.
- They walked barefooted but when travelling long distances they wore pieces of skins fastened around their feet.
- They did not care about the old and always left them behind while travelling.
- NOTE:
- When the two groups (San and Khoikhoi) are combined, they are collectively known as the Khoisan people.
- **COMPARISON BETWEEN THE SAN AND THE KHOIKHOI:**
- **SIMILARITIES:**
- Both belonged to the same Khoisan family or Bushmanoid race.
- Both migrated from East and Central Africa to South Africa.
- Both had a click sound in their language.
- Both believed in life after death.
- Both loved dancing.

- Both married at an early age.
- They were both yellow or brown skinned in colour.
- Both regarded the praying mantis as a sign of wealth and good luck.
- Both carried out initiation ceremonies like circumcision.
- They were both food gatherers.
- Both had the family as the smallest unit of their social organization.
- Both were living a nomadic way of life.
- Both were decentralized communities.
- Both lived in temporary structures or houses.
- Both carried out raids on their neighbours.
- Both carried out polygamous marriages.
- Both used poisonous arrows for hunting.
- Both made sacrifices for rain.
- **DIFFERENCES:**
- The San were relatively shorter than the Khoikhoi.
- Unlike the Khoikhoi, the San were good artists or **great painters** who recorded major events of their life through pictures that **decorated the walls** of their caves and rocks.
- The Khoikhoi carried out pastoralism while the San were hunters.
- Unlike the Khoikhoi, the San had a limited vocabulary.
- The San believed in a god called **Kaggen** while the Khoikhoi believed in a god called **Tsuigoab**.
- The San carried out **endogamous** marriages while the Khoikhoi carried out **exogamous** marriages.
- The Khoikhoi lived in larger groups while the San lived in small groups.
- The Khoikhoi were ruled by chiefs while the San were ruled by the elders.
- The San were the first inhabitants while the Khoikhoi were the second inhabitants in South Africa.
- **SAMPLE QUESTION:**
- **1a) EXPLAIN THE ORIGINS OF THE KHOISAN**
- **Introduction:**
- They were a **combination** of the San and Khoi-Khoi.
- They were part of **earliest** inhabitants of South Africa.
- They have a **yellow/brownish** colour, **short** structured and a **click sound** in their language.
- They were closely related to the early man **Australopithecus (Southern Ape)/Hairy bodied**.
- The Khoisan arrived in South Africa between **1000AD-1300AD**.
- They are known by various names. The San are referred to as the **Roa, Twa**, hunters, **Bushmen** while the Khoikhoi are at times referred to as **Herders, Hottentots and Men of men**.
- They originated from the **Bushmanoid** race or **Khoisan family**.
- However, the origin of the Khoisan is **not clear** to the historians.

- Available information about the **origins** of the Khoisan is **obtained from the archeological studies**.
- It is thus believed that the Khoisan might have originated from the mainland of **Tanganyika or East Africa**. It is believed that by AD 1000, the Khoisan were living on the mainland of Tanganyika.
- From East Africa, they then moved **Southwards**, through **Central Africa** and finally settled in different areas of South Africa.
- This is proved by similar **rock** and **cave paintings** found in East, Central and South Africa.
- Once in South Africa, they first settled in the lands of **Damaraland** and **Batlapin Plateau**.
- Later, they spread to the provinces of **Transkei, Cape, Natal, Orange Free State** and **Transvaal as well as Griqualand West**.
- While some went into **Swazi** and **Lesotho Highlands**.
- Others settled in the mountains of **Winterburg, Drakensberg, Brankenstein** and **Camdeboo**.
- They also settled along **rivers** like **Vaal, Orange, Kei, Tugera, Fish, Umtata** and **Tsomo**.
- The arrival of more advanced groups like the Bantu and the Dutch pushed them into **the deserts of Kalahari** and **Namib**.
- Today, the survivors of these groups live in the countries of **Namibia, Botswana** and **Angola**.
- The Khoikhoi moved in **four groups**, the **Nama, Gona, Cochoqua** and **Korana**.
- The **Nama** (*Western Khoikhoi*) moved **westwards** along the Orange River and settled in **Namibia**.
- The **Gona** (*Eastern Khoikhoi*) followed the eastern side into the **Fish River Valley**.
- The **Cochoqua** (*Cape Khoikhoi*) moved into the **coastal areas of the Cape**.
- The Korana went into **Griqualand west**.
- By the 15th Century, the Khoikhoi were found living along **Saldanha Bay, Table Bay, Vessel Bay** and **Mossel Bay**.
- Their **Eastward expansion** and migration was checked by the Indian Ocean and the coming of the Europeans.
- The Khoikhoi settled in the land between **Atlantic Coast** and **Buffalo Coast**.
- In Conclusion, the origins of the Khoisan are **not clear to historians**.
- **1. B) HOW WERE THEY ORGANIZED BY 1650?**
- They were organized **politically, socially and economically** as shown below;
- **ECONOMICALLY,**
- The Khoisan carried out **pottery**.
- Land was a community property
- However, among the Khoikhoi the **basis of their wealth** was not land but **cattle**.
- In fact, the Khoikhoi had a **pastoral economy** which was a source of wealth.
- The Khoikhoi kept **sheep, goats and cattle**.
- Only on **special occasions** did the Khoikhoi **slaughter** their animals.
- Cattle for example, served as **food, milk, transport, prestige, and wealth**.

- Among the Khoikhoi, men drunk cow's milk while women drunk Ewe's milk.
- The San's main **source of wealth** was from their **hunting grounds**.
- However, the **San had little material wealth** compared to the Khoikhoi.
- The San, therefore, **jealously protected their only hunting grounds against any intruders**.
- They **hunted small** and big **animals** like chitters, zebra, squirrels, hyenas as **well as birds** like ostrich, vultures, etc.
- Sometimes, the San **would hunt for the Khoikhoi**.
- They used **poisonous arrows** and bows to hunt down small animals like squirrels.
- Large animals were **trapped in big pits**.
- The Khoisan was also good at **tracking animals**.
- **Europeans obtained** large quantities of **cattle and sheep** from the Khoikhoi.
- The Khoikhoi also obtained large quantities of **iron tools from the Bantu**.
- The San **had no idea about iron working** but made **tools out of stones and sticks**.
- **SOCIAL ORGANIZATION**
- Socially, the **family was the basic** social unit where relatives lived.
- The San had **weak family ties** and never cared for the sick and old.
- **Elders were highly respected** among the Khoisan communities.
- **Clan elders** were, therefore a **source of knowledge, wisdom, truth, and culture**.
- The Khoisan had a **click sound** in their language.
- **Members of the same group** were related **through marriage**.
- **Polygamous marriages** were highly encouraged especially among elders, though **monogamy also existed**.
- **Marrying many wives** was for **prestige** and **social harmony**.
- The San encouraged **early marriages**.
- San boys could marry at the early age of 14-15 years girls of 7-8 years.
- The Khoikhoi encouraged later marriages whereby boys married at 15 and above while the girls at 8 years and above.
- **After marriage** the man (*groom or son-in-law*) could **join the family** of his **bride** (*wife*) and hunt for them until the birth of their first child.
- By hunting and providing food for the in-laws, the boy was **paying bride price**.
- **After having their first born**, the couple could then be **allowed to form** their own home.
- San **women** were so **courageous** and **gave birth alone** and cut the baby's umbilical cord with a sharp stick.
- The San women **produced very few children about 3 to 4** because of their hunting and wandering life.
- The **San practiced endogamous marriages** i.e. married within the same clan.
- The **Khoikhoi** however encouraged **exogamous marriages**.
- The Khoisan **danced** at the appearance of the **new/half/full** moon and after a good hunt.

- **Initiation ceremonies** were very important and serviced the cultural and adulthood roles where the San tested the hunting skills of their boys.
- The Khoikhoi **encouraged circumcision** as part of their initiation rites.
- **Hunting** also served as a **source of leisure** among the Khoisan.
- The San **trained the youths** in the skills of how to **use local herbs** and medicines to treat certain diseases.
- The Khoisan **celebrated important stages** in life like **death, marriage, birth, and puberty**.
- They **drank fermented juice** and **honey** during their social ceremonies.
- The San lived in **temporally shelters, caves, and** under **shades of big trees**.
- The Khoikhoi however, lived in makeshift settlements/doom-shaped houses/beehive like houses.
- Later, they **adopted a more settled life** from the Bantu neighbours.
- They had a strong love for art and were **great painters** who recorded major events of their life through pictures that **decorated walls** of their caves and rocks.
- The San **never lived a permanent life** but always wandered predominating lived a **nomadic life**.
- The Khoisan were also **religious people** and believed in **life after death** and **supreme being**.
- They worshipped a Supreme Being or god called **Kaggen/Huwe/Tuisgoab** who was believed to be the **creator/father of our fathers/giver of wealth**.
- On earth, Kaggen or Tuisgoab manifested himself through the **praying mantis, thunder and lightening**.
- Accordingly, prayers and **sacrifices** were offered to him for blessings and rain especially during the dry season.
- They **treated the praying mantis** with a lot of **respect as a symbol of wealth and fortune**.
- The **mantis** was thought to **live** in the **sky with souls of the dead men**.
- They wore **ornaments of ostrich, egg shells, and feathers/animal skin, and leaves**.
- **Social affairs** were also decided by **male elders**.
- **POLITICAL ORGANIZATION**
- Politically, the Khoisan had a segmentary or **decentralized government** with a **weak political set up**.
- The Khoisan leaders were **not hereditary** and at any occasion they would have a new head.
- To the San, the **work of the government** was done at the **level of each settlement** with the help of **headman** while to **Khoikhoi it was the chief**.
- The headman ruled **according to acceptable norms and traditions of society**.
- The San lived in **numerous small isolated settlements**.
- The smallest San had **25-70 people** and the largest between **200 and 500 people**.
- The Khoikhoi lived in larger communities/camps/nations between **600-2000 people**.

- **Each settlement was practically independent of the other** with their own leaders.
- The headman was assisted by a **council of elders** whose decisions he implemented without question/**elders carried out decisions** on behalf of the people.
- The **headman also exercised full ritual powers** i.e. **he presided over initiation and** maintained law and order.
- **Council meetings were regularly held** to handle important matters like disputes.
- **Clan democracy** existed among the Khoisan and **membership** to the council was open to all **male adults**.
- **These groups were bound together** by a **common language** and name which distinguished it from the rest.
- Khoisan leaders **had neither permanent laws nor written constitutions** instead their leaders ruled circumstantially as well as **customarily**.
- The Khoisan **were friendly** to other people **unless provoked or attacked**.
- **Every group (*band*) had a responsibility of protecting their land** against intrusion from other groups.
- **Their women had no say in politics and were not respected in society.**
- The Khoisan **had no permanent or standing army** and **no military leaders**.
- **However, the youths were responsible** for the **defence and security** of the society.
- Some groups of the San lived peacefully on the fringes of the Khoikhoi who helped them against the foreigners.
- In **conclusion, the Khoisan people** were by 1650 well organised **economically, socially and politically** as explained above.
- **THE BANTU MIGRATION INTO SOUTH AFRICA:**
- **WHO WERE THE BANTU?**
- The Bantu are a group of people with a common word '**Ntu**' or '**Ndu**' in their language and they arrived in South Africa over 1000 years ago.
- They belonged to the Negroid family.
- Their origin is not clear. However, they are believed to have migrated from West Africa i.e. in the Niger Benue or Cameroon – Niger areas.
- From West Africa, they moved to Central Africa in South Eastern Congo Basin. This therefore became their dispersal point.
- It is believed that they entered South Africa around AD.1000 and they started migrating around 2000 years ago.
- **REASONS FOR THEIR MIGRATION:**
- The Bantu migrated to South Africa due to various reasons that included the following;
- They migrated because of political oppression or mistreatment in their home land and therefore, they wanted new areas.
- Epidemic diseases like malaria, sleeping sickness and small pox which attacked the Bantu might have forced them to migrate.
- The outbreak of famine in their home land also caused the Bantu migration to South Africa as they moved in search of food.

- Population increase in their home land resulted into overcrowding of people which forced them to look for areas which were sparsely populated.
- The Bantu skill of iron working also led to their migration because they had strong weapons like spears which encouraged them to move.
- Some Bantu are believed to have migrated due to drought and therefore, they were looking for places with water and pasture since they kept some animals.
- Internal conflicts among the Bantu themselves forced those who were defeated to migrate to South Africa.
- The Bantu might have migrated looking for fertile soils that would support the growing of crops since they were farmers.
- The Bantu migrated because they were running away from external conflicts in their home land.
- Natural calamities such as floods and earth quakes might also have forced the Bantu to migrate from their home land to South Africa.
- Group influence (band wagon effect) also led to the migration of the Bantu when they saw their friends and relatives migrating.
- Some of them especially the youths migrated to South Africa due to the love for adventure since they wanted to discover and know what was beyond their home land.
- **THE COURSE OF THE BANTU MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT:**
- Describe the movement and settlement of the Bantu in South Africa by the middle of the 19th century.
- ***(Leave a page and fix the sketch map provided to you here before writing the course)***
- The Bantu are a group of people with a common word 'Ntu' or 'Ndu' in their language and they belonged to the Negroid family.
- They are believed to have originated or migrated from the areas of the Niger Basin in West Africa and arrived in South Africa over 1000 years ago.
- Their migration is not clear and therefore there is little evidence showing how they moved and settled into South Africa.
- Their migration was however slow and gradual and spread over a long period of time.
- The Bantu were the third and last African group to migrate into South Africa.
- They migrated in four major groups or waves and these included the Shona – Venda, Sotho – Tswana, Nguni – Tsonga and the Ambo – Herero.
- The **Shona – Venda** were the first group to move and settle in South Africa. They are believed to have started migrating around the 9th century.
- They entered Zimbabwe where they settled and formed the **Kalanga culture** or Zimbabwe culture.
- By the 18th century, some Shona groups like the Venda and Bemba had crossed River Limpopo to escape the local wars and settled in the Limpopo Valley.
- The Shona are now found in Zimbabwe.
- The **Sotho – Tswana** were the second group to enter South Africa and they formed the central wave.

- They are believed to have been fathered by either **Mangope** or **Maralong**.
- They include tribes like the Sotho, Tswana, Basuto, Kweni, Pedi and Rolong among others.
- The Sotho – Tswana passed through the central route (areas between Lake Tanganyika and Lake Malawi) and arrived in South Africa by the 13th and 14th centuries. They settled north of the point at which River Orange meets Vaal River.
- The Sotho were sub-divided into three main sub-divisions i.e. the Northern Sotho, the Western Sotho and the Southern Sotho.
- The Tswana settled in Botswana formally known as Bechuanaland.
- The Southern Sotho moved and settled in Lesotho formally known as Basutoland.
- The Northern Sotho settled in northern and central Transvaal.
- The Western Sotho moved in the Eastern direction to Botswana.
- The Sotho – Tswana therefore mainly occupied the area between the Drakensberg Mountains and the Kalahari Desert.
- Later, the Sotho – Tswana expanded to the East, West and South wards as far as River Orange.
- However, the Westwards expansion of the Sotho was checked or stopped by the Kalahari Desert. Also, the Drakensberg Mountains limited their Eastwards expansion.
- The **Tawana**, a sub-group of the Sotho – Tswana settled in the coast of Lake Ngami i.e. in the areas of the Kalahari and Namibia Deserts.
- The **Pedi**, a subsection of the Sotho – Tswana settled in the mountainous areas of Transvaal.
- The **Nguni – Tsonga** were the third and largest group to enter South Africa.
- They used the Eastern wave / route or direction between Lake Malawi and the coast.
- The Nguni – Tsonga included tribes like Zulu, Swazi, Ndebele, Mthethwa, Ngwane, Xhosa, Pondo and Tsonga among others.
- Some of the Tsonga remained in Mozambique and therefore they did not reach South Africa.
- The Nguni – Tsonga mainly settled in the southern part of South Africa.
- Some of the Nguni – Tsonga poured into Zulu land and Natal up to the boarder of the Eastern Cape Colony.
- They later spread to Umtata River by AD1400.
- The Xhosa moved and settled along River Umzimvubu by 1300 AD.
- By 1600AD, the Xhosa had reached River Kei and River Umzikhulu.
- They also occupied areas of Transvaal, Transkei and the Cape.
- Some crossed into Lesotho highlands or mountains.
- Majority of them were cut off from other groups by the Drakensberg Mountains.
- By the 19th century, the Xhosa had reached the Fish River and they later spread to River Tugela and River Kei.
- The Nguni – Tsonga therefore lived between the Drakensberg Mountains and the Indian Ocean corridor.
- Today, they occupy parts of the Transvaal, Natal, Cape Province and Zulu land.
- The Ambo – Herero were the fourth and last group to enter into South Africa.

- They are also known as the **South-Western Bantu** because they settled in South West Africa or present day **Namibia**.
- They are believed to have left the Congo Basin around the 16th century and they entered South Africa using the Western route.
- By the 19th century, the Herero had reached Namibia and occupied its highland areas.
- The Ambo (Ovambo) moved into Namibia and settled in present day **Ambo land**.
- The Ambo – Herero were however cut off from other Bantu by the Kalahari Desert.
- The rest of the Ambo moved and settled near the Kalahari Desert. These deserts also limited their expansion eastwards.
- Today, the Bantu are the most widely spread people in South Africa and make up to 70% of the total population of South Africa.
- **HOW THE BANTU MIGRATION AND SETTLEMENT AFFECTED THE KHOISAN PEOPLE OR THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE BANTU AND THE KHOISAN:**
 - What effects did the Bantu settlement have on the peoples of South Africa?
 - How did the Bantu migration and settlement affect the Khoisan?
 - Khoisan is a collective word which refers to the two groups of people i.e. the Khoikhoi and San.
 - The settlement of the Bantu in South Africa affected the early inhabitants (Khoikhoi and San) both positively and negatively as explained below;
 - Their settlement led to increased population in South Africa since they came in big numbers.
 - The Bantu lived side by side with the Khoisan and mixed freely with the Khoisan.
 - Intermarriages took place between the Khoisan and the Bantu in all areas where they settled. This gave birth to the **Thembu** tribe.
 - The Khoisan learnt the art of **iron smelting** from the Bantu. As a result, the Khoisan dropped their weaker weapons and tools made out of stones and bones and started producing iron tools like bows, spears, pangas, hoes and axes.
 - The Bantu introduced new crops to the Khoisan like millet, yams, pumpkins, beans, sorghum and calabashes among others.
 - The Khoikhoi later learnt agriculture from the Bantu. And because of agriculture, the Khoisan lived a more permanent or settled life.
 - The Khoisan started carrying out trade with the Bantu. The Khoisan gave hunted meat, feathers as well as cattle and sheep products to the Bantu in exchange for millet and grains.
 - The Bantu introduced a **centralized system of administration** to the Khoisan which strengthened their political organization.
 - The Khoisan learnt weaving and curving from the Bantu.
 - The Khoisan and the Bantu fought each other over land.
 - The Khoisan were **defeated** in the wars over land by the Bantu. This was because the Bantu had better weapons of iron as compared to the Khoisan.
 - The Khoisan lost their **independence** because they were conquered by the Bantu.
 - The Khoikhoi leaders lost much of their **political power** to the Bantu.

- The Khoisan **lost their lives** as many of them were killed by the Bantu in the wars over land which led to **depopulation**.
- The Khoisan (San) lost their hunting and fishing grounds to the Bantu.
- The Khoisan lost their grazing land to the Bantu.
- The Khoisan were displaced from their land. This was because the Bantu were farmers and therefore they needed more land for cultivation.
- The Khoisan suffered from famine which increased their suffering or misery.
- The Khoisan were pushed into unfavourable areas like the desert or drier areas of Namibia and Kalahari where life became difficult for the Khoisan people. In these dry areas, food and wild game became scarce.
- The Khoisan (Khoikhoi) lost their animals (live stock) to the Bantu through raids (attacks) and this made the Khoikhoi poorer.
- The Khoisan were made slaves for the Bantu and they depended on the Bantu for their survival. For example, the San started hunting for the Bantu.
- The Khoisan absorbed or assimilated by the Bantu who were stronger and more organized. They therefore lost their culture to the Bantu.
- The Bantu adopted or copied some of the cultures of the Khoisan. For example, the Xhosa who were Bantu adopted the click sound of the Khoisan and they started speaking with a click sound like the Khoisan.
- The Khoisan lost their property to the Bantu.
- The Bantu (Xhosa) took the Khoisan women as their official wives which was an insult to the Khoisan.
- In conclusion, the Bantu invasion created insecurity, thus destroying the political, social and economic organization of the Khoisan.
- **THE SOTHO- TSWANA (CENTRAL BANTU)**
- Who were the Sotho –Tswana?
- They were part of the Bantu speaking people of South Africa.
- They are believed to have come from Congo just like other Bantu groups.
- They were the second group of Bantu to enter South Africa and they used the central route or wave.
- They are believed to have been fathered by either Mangope or Maralong. They include tribes like the Sotho, Tswana, Kweni, Pedi, Rolong and Ngwaketse among others.
- The Sotho – Tswana had similar characteristics with other Bantu groups.
- They are believed to have reached South Africa between the 13th and 16th centuries. They mainly settled in areas like Lesotho, Botswana, Northern and Central Transvaal, the Limpopo valley, a round rivers Orange, Fish and Tugela.
- The Sotho – Tswana had larger settlements than those of the Nguni – Tsonga
- They established their settlements on hill tops and mountainous areas like Butha – Buthe and Thaba- Bosiu
- **WAYS OF LIFE OF THE SOTHO – TSWANA**
- **Politically,**
- The tribe was the basic unit of their political organization.

- Each tribe was headed by a chief who performed political, economic and social functions.
- Their political units or regions were quite bigger compared to the Khoisan.
- The chief was the judicial, religious and military leader of the chiefdom. He was assisted by the Chief Ndunas (commander) chosen from the commoners and he did most of the work .
- The position of the chief was hereditary but not permanent and therefore he could be removed in case he did not perform his duties well.
- There was a council which assisted the chief among the Sotho called the **Pisto**.
- **Socially,**
- The family was an important institution and therefore it formed the basic unit of the society.
- The Sotho had extended families where by the grandparents, parents, children, aunties and uncles lived together.
- The youths were initiated into adult hood through circumcision
- The Sotho - Tswana lived in clustered villages on hill tops and sometimes built huts there.
- Marriage among the Sotho was polygamous though monogamy was also practiced.
- They were religious and their religion centered on worshiping ancestral spirits.
- The elders were important among the Sotho- Tswana because they settled disputes or conflicts.
- The father who was also the family head was the family priest.
- The Sotho–Tswana also believed in a supreme god called **Madmoth** or the creator.
- **Economically,**
- The Sotho – Tswana were cultivators. They grew crops like yams, millet and sorghum.
- They practiced pastoralism and kept animals like cattle, sheep and goats. They used cattle for bride wealth and prestige.
- The Sotho – Tswana practiced some iron working and they had their iron working industry at **Mabostas** and they made iron implements like spears, hoes, axes etc.
- Trade was carried out by the Sotho- Tswana. This was done among themselves and with foreigners
- The Sotho–Tswana were also gatherers they gathered fruits and insects.
- They also carried out hunting and hunted animals like antelopes and hyenas among others.
- The Sotho- Tswana also carried out raiding of their neighbours especially for cows.
- Among the Sotho–Tswana, land was very important and it was communally owned.
- **THE HERERO- AMBO**
- Who were the Herero- Ambo?
- They were the part of the Bantu speaking people in South Africa.
- They are believed to have come from Congo around the 16th and 19th centuries.
- They were the third group to enter the South Africa.
- They included the **Herero** and the **Ambo**.

- The Herero-Ambo speak generally a similar language with the Bantu.
- They also took the South Western wave or route. They are also known as the south western Bantu because they settled in South Western Africa or Namibia.
- The Ambo or Ovambo moved and settled in **Ambo land**. However, they were cut off from other Bantu by the Kalahari Desert.
- **THE EUROPEAN INTEREST IN SOUTH AFRICA**
- **THE COMING OF THE DUTCH OR BOERS**
- The Dutch who came from Holland, also known as the Netherlands, were the first Europeans to settle in South Africa and this was in the 17th century.
- For much of the 16th century, the Dutch were part of the Spanish empire. However, in **1572** the Dutch won their Independence and they therefore decided to participate in the Indian and Atlantic Ocean trade which had earlier on been dominated by the Spanish and the Portuguese.
- In order to effectively control to trade specially in spices, the Dutch merchants formed the **United Dutch East India Company (DEICO)**.
- It was this company which carried out the duty of discovering the sea route to India as well as promoting trade between the Far East and Holland.
- While the Dutch were on their way to the Far East, their ship Haarlem capsized or got an accident in **1647** at the Table Bay near the Cape of Good Hope and the survivors were able to swim up to the shores.
- The survivors stayed for a period of six months while repairing the ship. In the process, they discovered many good things about the Cape which influenced them to make a report back home.
- The government of Holland decided to establish a settlement at the Cape.
- On **6th April 1652**, the first group of Dutch settlers arrived at the Cape, sent by the Dutch East India Company on behalf of the Dutch government.
- The group was led by **Jan Van Riebeeck** who arrived at the Cape with three ships to establish a Dutch settlement at the Cape.
- **REASONS FOR THE DUTCH SETTLEMENT AT THE CAPE IN 1652**
- The reasons for the coming and settling of the Dutch at the Cape were economic, administrative, social and strategic in nature.
- The Portuguese successes in the Far East attracted the Dutch to settle at the Cape. The Portuguese had successfully controlled the Indian Ocean or spice trade in the Far East and this attracted the Dutch to come and also control the profitable trade.
- The Dutch also settled at the Cape to use it as a base to collect taxes from the incoming and out-going ships at the Cape.
- The Cape was strategically located. The Cape was mid-way between Europe and the Far East (Asia) which would act as a resting and relaxation Centre so as to break the long tiresome journey.
- South Africa had abundant natural resources such as fruits, minerals and animals which the Dutch wanted to exploit for their benefit.
- The formation of the Dutch East India Company (DEICO) gave way for the Dutch to settle in South Africa i.e. sponsored the first Dutch settlers under Jan Van Riebeeck.

- The Dutch wanted to use the Cape as a workshop for repairing broken ships as well as re refueling their ships.
- The Dutch wanted to set up a Fort (military base) so as to protect the Dutch sailors from other Europeans.
- The Cape had a good a Mediterranean climate which favoured the growing of vegetables, fruits, animal rearing and human settlement.
- They wanted to get meat from the Khoikhoi who were cattle keepers so as to overcome the problem of food shortages while on their journey.
- They wanted to establish a medical centre or sick bay to treat the Dutch sailors and soldiers.
- The Cape had fertile soils which the Dutch farmers wanted for growing vegetables and fruits for the sailors.
- The Cape had good natural harbours like Table Bay which would enable the easy landing of ships for trade as well as for protection from their enemies.
- They wanted to revenge against Spain which had ruled or colonized them up to 1572.
- The Cape had plenty of unoccupied land that the Dutch hoped to use for their economic activities as well as expanding their settlement.
- The Cape was also free from many dangerous tropical diseases like malaria.
- The hospitality of the local people especially the Khoikhoi also encouraged the Dutch to settle at the Cape.
- The Island of St. Helena that had for many years supplied the Dutch sailors with fresh fruits had by the 17th century ran short of such fruits and therefore the Cape would act as source of meat.
- They wanted to avoid the occupation of the Cape by the English merchants who were strongly competing with the Dutch.
- It was because of the accidental breakdown of the Haarlem ship in **1647**. The survivors of the ship wreckage gave good reports about the Cape to the Dutch government and this encouraged the Dutch to come and settle there.
- The courage of Jan Van Riebeeck who led the first settlers in April 1652 gave more courage to other Dutch to come and settle at the Cape.
- **HOW THE DUTCH SETTLEMENT OR COLONY WAS ESTABLISHED AT THE CAPE**
- The establishment of the Cape Colony started officially in **1652**, when the Dutch East Indian Company (DEICO) established a temporary calling station or refreshment station.
- The Dutch Colony started as a tiny temporary calling station or refreshment station at the Table Bay.
- It was started by about 90 Dutchmen who arrived at the Cape on **6th April 1652** under the leadership of **Jan Van Riebeeck**.
- Jan Van Riebeeck was instructed by the DEICO to set up a fort and develop a vegetable garden at the Cape for the benefit of their ships on the eastern trade route.

- In 1657, the policy of colonization was adopted and therefore nine soldiers were released from the company services.
- Each soldier was given $13\frac{1}{2}$ hectares of land along the Valley of Leisbeck River to farm.
- The nine men were allowed to open up their own farms but they were to sell their produce to the company.
- The nine soldiers were not to pay taxes for a period of 12 years to allow them carryout their activities smoothly.
- In 1662, more Dutch came to the Cape and therefore the number of the white people increased to 250 of which 130 were colonists (settlers).
- In 1668, the population of the whites at the Cape increased when the DEICO imported 200 French Protestants known as **Huguenots** who taught the Dutch settlers better farming methods.
- Later in 1676, the Governors of the Cape encouraged immigrations and therefore more settlements were established beyond the Cape Town like **Stellen Bosch** and **De'pearl**.
- By early 1700, the number of the Dutch settlers at the Cape had greatly increased which forced independent Boer farmers to migrate to the interior and this led to the expansion of the Cape Colony.
- This expansion of the Dutch colony took the North East and Eastern directions from the original Cape boundary. This expansion was mainly by the individual Dutch farmers who moved from place to place looking for pasture and land for settlement.
- By 1702, the Dutch settlers had gained economic strength. For example, the Cape farmers were producing wheat, milk and wine and this helped them to create a self-sustaining Dutch Colony.
- In 1706, DEICO started taxing the Dutch who had been given land titles and exempted from paying taxes for three years. This forced the settlers to move further in land and they became pastoral farmers.
- By 1780, the Cape colony had three districts: GraafReinet, Swellendam and the Cape. The Colony had expanded and the settlements had extended through the Southern part of the Cape and eastwards to the Great Fish River or into the KhoiKhoi territory.
- By 1795 the Dutch Cape colony had over 1500 farmers (colonists) although they were experiencing economic problems due to the corruption of the company officials.
- In conclusion, by **1795** the Dutch Cape colony had expanded into the interior to include four districts of the Cape, Stellen Bosch, Swellendam and Graaf Reinet.
- How did the Dutch expand their colony up to the Fish River by 1795?
- **REASONS FOR THE EXPANSION OF THE DUTCH COLONY OR SETTLEMENT UP TO THE GREAT FISH RIVER BY 1795**
- The expansion of the Dutch colony North East and East wards was unplanned and it was done only by the Dutch settlers (farmers) without company help because of the following political, social and economic reasons;

- The presence of plenty of unoccupied land in the interior attracted the Dutch farmers to expand their colony up to the Great Fish River.
- The land at the Cape had lost its fertility. Therefore, the Dutch farmers needed fertile soils, hence expanding into the interior.
- The Dutch farmers were attracted by the good climate in the interior around the Fish River Valley which was suitable for human settlement and farming.
- The Dutch were semi nomadic or pastoralist in nature who moved into the interior searching for water and pasture for their animals.
- The absence of natural barriers like valleys and mountains in the interior also enabled the Dutch to expand.
- The Dutch wanted to get large pieces of land for grazing their animals since the interior had free land. Therefore, they decided to move away from the Cape.
- They also moved up to the Fish River because the population had increased i.e. by 1685 there were 150 white families but by 1700, there were around 1500 families and so they had to look for free areas behind the Cape.
- The Dutch were militarily superior or stronger as compared to the African communities like the Khoisan and this made them to expand East wards very easily.
- The inability of the DEICO to stop the Dutch farmers from moving away from the Cape colony led to the expansion of the Dutch colony.
- The failure of the company to provide essential services to the Dutch settlers like educational facilities, medical services and water among others forced the settlers to expand into the interior.
- The Dutch farmers had discovered that the Khoisan had been weakened by the outbreak of epidemic diseases like small pox, malaria and sleeping sickness, hence their expansion East wards.
- The Dutch settlers (farmers) wanted to be independent from the company that wanted to control their social, political and economic ways of life, yet it subjected them to unfair policies.
- The Dutch farmers were running away from the harsh company rules and regulations that affected their economic activities for example;
- The company imposed a high tax or rent on the land which made the Dutch farmers poor, hence forcing them to move East wards where they would get free land to promote their farming activities.
- The company never allowed the Dutch farmers to grow profitable crops like wheat, tobacco and rubber which brought in a lot of money but they were only allowed to grow fruits and vegetables, hence forcing them to expand Eastwards.
- The company restricted the marketing of the produce i.e. the Dutch settlers were supposed to sell their produce only to the DEICO at low prices which forced the farmers to move into the interior to look for market.
- The company also took $\frac{1}{10}$ (a tenth) of the income of the Dutch farmers as a fee for grazing rights over land that the company never bought. This forced many Dutch farmers to move East wards up to the Fish River, leading to expansion.
- The company derived the Dutch settlers ownership of land. Land was a legal asset for the company and therefore it was not to be given to the Dutch settlers.

- The company also forced the Dutch farmers to join and fight in the militia whenever need arose yet the company never came to protect the settlers whenever they were attacked by the Africans. This forced the settlers more away from the cape.
- The company had corrupt officials such as Willem Vander Stel who were dishonest and always misused the company funds which forced the Dutch farmers to move into the interior.
- Most of the Dutch farmers had become bankrupt and therefore they wanted to try their luck outside the Cape colony which seemed to give them no opportunity, hence the expansion eastwards up to the Great Fish River valley.
- **EFFECTS OF THE EXPANSION OF THE DUTCH COLONY**
- How did the expansion of the Dutch colony affect the Africans?
- As the colony expanded into the interior, the local people like the Khoisan and Bantu lost their land to the expanding Dutch.
- Wars broke out between the Dutch settlers and the Khoisan over land and cattle in the interior which led to the destruction of property.
- There was depopulation in the interior due to the loss of lives as a result of the wars between the Africans and the Dutch.
- The Africans lost their land to the expanding Dutch.
- Many people were made slaves by the Boers or Dutch farmers.
- The Africans lost their political independence and freedom to the Dutch.
- The Africans suffered from famine as their agricultural farms were destroyed during the process of the Dutch expansion.
- The KhoiKhoi lost their animals like cattle due to the Dutch raids.
- The Africans in such places became poor as a result of the destruction of their economic activities.
- The Africans were forced to offer labour on the Boer farms or plantations without or with little payment.
- Modern systems of farming were introduced and adopted by the Africans in the interior for example plantation farming.
- The Africans abandoned their culture and adopted the new Dutch (European) cultures like dressing, language, eating habits etc.
- The Dutch expansion displaced the Africans into infertile areas. For example, the Xhosa were pushed to the East of the Keiskama River.
- Loyalty shifted as many Africans became servants of the white man.
- The Africans were undermined and segregated by the Dutch. This laid a foundation for Apartheid in South Africa.
- The Africans started depending on the Dutch settlers after losing their land and cattle.
- Many Africans suffered from European diseases like Tuberculosis and sexually transmitted diseases.
- The Dutch set up schools and hospitals which accidentally benefited the Africans.
- The Africans acquired bad European habits like smoking and prostitution.
- The African women were raped by the Dutch hence giving birth to a new race of the coloureds.

- Some Africans in interior traded with the Dutch.

PROBLEMS FACED BY THE EARLY OR PIONEER DUTCH SETTLERS AT THE CAPE

- The Dutch settlers faced a number of problems as they tried to establish, and after establishing their farms in and around the Cape which were political, social and economic in nature.
- They faced a problem of **home sickness** because they were far away from their home country (Holland)
- They lacked the geographical knowledge and information of the area and hence they failed to succeed in agriculture at first.
- They faced a problem of tropical diseases like dysentery, malaria, sleeping sickness and small pox at the Cape which attacked and killed many of them.
- They faced a problem of hostile tribes like the Bantu and Khoisan that always attacked them.
- They faced a problem of language barrier i.e. they could not speak African languages which made communication with the Africans difficult.
- They faced a problem of poor transport and communication network since there were no roads at the Cape.
- The Dutch settlers faced a problem of shortage of women to act as their wives and this starved them sexually thus leading to **homosexuality** and mixed marriages with Africans.
- They faced a problem of food shortage since the Khoikhoi had migrated from the Cape into the interior yet they were the ones to supply the Dutch with food and meat.
- The Dutch settlers lacked enough labour to carry out cultivation since they came in small numbers and yet the Africans were not ready to work for them.
- They faced a problem of poor housing (shelter) facilities because they had constructed wooden structures which normally leaked during the rainy season.
- They lacked enough funds to effectively administer the Cape colony. This was because the government of Holland did not support the settlers but left everything to the DEICO.
- They faced a problem of unfavourable weather conditions. For example, the Cape experienced serious drought and famine which killed many Dutch settlers.
- They faced a problem of lack of education for their children since there were no educational facilities at the Cape.
- They faced a problem of shortage of essential supplies like medicine, clothes etc. since their home was far away from South Africa.
- They also faced attacks from wild animals at the Cape.
- They faced a problem of being isolated by the local people at the Cape (Africans) who saw them as devils.
- They faced a problem of limited market for their produce since they sold only to the company at low prices which left them poor.

- Most of the Dutch settlers were former soldiers with no agriculture skills and experiences, hence failing in agriculture.
- The rate of corruption by the Dutch governors and other company officials at the Cape led to the misuse of the company's funds.
- The Dutch settlers also faced a problem of bad or harsh company rules. For example, the company charged the settlers high rents for using land.
- The Dutch settlers were also prohibited by the company from growing profitable crops such as wheat, cotton and tobacco thus leaving them poor.
- The Dutch settlers were also not allowed to transfer ownership of the land they settled on to their children thus making them squatters.
- **SOLUTIONS TO THE PROBLEMS FACED**
- Jan Van Riebeeck expanded the settlement by bringing more land under cultivation. This increased agricultural production and therefore solved the problem of food shortage.
- The problem of food shortage was also solved by encouraging the Dutch settlers to raid the Bantu farms.
- Economic restrictions were relaxed by the company. For example, the Dutch settlers were allowed to sell their produce to the passing ships or other companies other than the DEICO alone thus increasing their incomes.
- Slaves were imported from Java (Indonesia) and Madagascar to solve the problem of labour shortage.
- The Dutch settlers were also later encouraged to enslave the Africans who provided labour on their farms.
- The Dutch solved the problem of shortage of women by importing orphan girls from Holland who became their wives.
- Mixed marriages were also encouraged between the Dutch settlers and the Africans (Khoikhoi) to reduce the problem of lack of wives.
- The problem of education was solved by the Dutch reformed Church which set up elementary schools to provide education to the Dutch children.
- A large hospital was built in **1707** which provided medical care to the Dutch settlers at the Cape.
- A large water reservoir was built to provide water in the dry season so as to solve the problem of water shortage.
- The company gave free land to the Dutch settlers where they would cultivate to get enough food, thus improving their health.
- Corruption was solved by dismissing the corrupt governors like **Willem Van Der Stel** who was dismissed from the company services in **1707** because of his corrupt practices.
- Agricultural practices were strictly increased from 1658 to increase the farmer's incomes and revenue from farming.
- The problem of insecurity was solved by putting in place a local militia (army) whereby every man between 16 and 60 years had to join this army and by 1768, this force had 500 soldiers. This army protected the Dutch settlers against African attacks.

- The Dutch also built a large defense castle (wall) to protect the Dutch settlers against the African attacks.
- The company imported experienced French farmers known as **Huguenots** to teach better farming methods to the Dutch settlers at the Cape.
- **THE DUTCH ADMINISTRATION AT THE CAPE, 1652-1795**
- The Cape colony was under the rule of the DEICO which operated in South Africa and the Far East.
- The company was headed by a **Committee of 17 Directors** called the "**Council of the 17**". These had their headquarters in **Amsterdam** in Netherlands (Holland).
- The Directors were responsible for planning, monitoring and financing the company's businesses abroad. They also appointed and dismissed workers.
- Due to the distance between Holland and the Cape, the company directors appointed a Governor-General to be in charge of the Cape colony.
- The Governor-General therefore was the Head of the administration (Executive) and he had all the powers on behalf of the 17 directors of the DEICO who were based in Holland.
- There were several Governor-Generals who governed the Cape colony at different times for example Jan Van Riebeeck, Willem Van der Stel and Simon Van der Stel.
- Jan Van Riebeeck was the first Governor-General and he governed the Cape in the interests of the 17 directors of the DEICO.
- The DEICO set up four organs to assist the Governor-General in the administration of the Cape colony. These were the Council of Policy, the Council of Justice, the Council of Security and the Dutch Reformed Church (DRC).
- The Council of policy was headed by the Governor-General. It was made up of 7 Senior company officials who assisted the Governor-General in administration and they were responsible for the well-being of all people in the colony i.e. from the lowest or slaves up to the wealthiest settlers
- The Council of policy was also responsible for making laws for the Dutch settlers. It therefore acted as the **Legislative** body or parliament of the colony.
- The Dutch settlers were however not represented in this Legislative body and therefore the DEICO officials neglected the demands and interests of the settlers.
- Below the Council of policy was the **Council of Justice**. This Council acted as the main court of appeal and it controlled other courts and maintained law and order in the colony. It was therefore responsible for the administration of justice in the Cape colony.
- The Council of Justice had powers to approve all forms of punishment at the Cape.
- It sat in Cape Town and the members were appointed by the Council of policy and therefore they were answerable to it.
- Each district however, had a magistrate court which was responsible for settling minor cases at the district level.
- The minor courts however, had untrained officials who used out-dated laws that only served the interests of the company.
- The magistrates were not independent and were ignorant about the legal procedures and sometimes never knew the laws that were broken.

- There were also **matrimonial courts** which were responsible for advising the young Dutch couples intending to get married.
- The Council of justice had to defend the interests of the company at all costs.
- There was also the **Council of Security of defence** or militia which was responsible for defending the Cape from foreign attacks especially from the Bantu.
- Its head was appointed by the Council of policy to ensure the security of the Cape colony. The Council of Defence however concentrated on the Coast and therefore it failed to defend the interior settlers against the Bantu which resulted into 1795 revolt at GraafReinet.
- The Dutch settlers also formed special local defence units called **Boer commando units** or **Burgher militia** to protect themselves from the African attacks.
- The fourth organ was the **Dutch Reformed Church (DRC)**. This church controlled the cultural and political life of the Dutch settlers at the Cape and therefore all the Dutch settlers were supposed to be members of this Church.
- The Dutch Reformed Church performed ceremonies like baptism and confirmation of the Dutch settlers which was usually done in the districts of Swellendam and GraafReinet.
- The Dutch reformed church was discriminative in its activities and it supported the claim that the Africans were inferior to the whites.
- The Dutch reformed church provided education to the Dutch settlers mainly reading, writing and arithmetic.
- It acted as a cultural bond for the Dutch settlers i.e. it united all the Dutch settlers through organizing regular pilgrimages or visits to their holy places in Swellen dam.
- The Africans were left at the bottom of the society and their responsibility was only to provide slave labour to the Dutch settlers and the company administrators.
- In conclusion, by 1672 the company has employed 180 people and by 1794 they were 2093 and it was the duty of the DEICO to appoint and disappoint at will.
- Explain how the DEICO administered the Cape up to 1795.
- How was the Dutch colony at the Cape organized by 1795?
- (Leave a page for a table)
- **ACHIEVEMENTS OF THE DUTCH EAST INDIA COMPANY (DEICO) AT THE CAPE BY 1795**
- The DEICO registered a number of achievements during its administration of the Cape colony which included the following;
- The company obtained land forcefully from the Africans and gave it to the Dutch settlers which increased food production at the Cape.
- The company was able to provide security to the Dutch settlers at the Cape through the Council of Defence or Security.
- The DEICO introduced the Dutch Rix Dollar and this boosted trade at the Cape between the company and the Dutch settlers.
- The company also encouraged the Dutch Reformed Church to spread religion and culture at the Cape especially among the Dutch settlers.

- The company established elementary schools at the Cape that enabled the children of the Dutch settlers to acquire education and this reduced the level of illiteracy and ignorance among the Dutch settlers.
- The company also established a hospital at the Cape which improved on the health of the Dutch settlers since they were able to receive medical services.
- The company reduced the problem of homosexuality through the importation of orphan girls from Netherlands who became wives of the Dutch settlers at the Cape.
- The DEICO also established a large water reservoir to store water for use during the dry season.
- The company introduced Christianity at the Cape through the Dutch Reformed Church although it was based on discriminative principles which undermined the African race as inferior.
- The company policies also led to the expansion of the Dutch colony into four districts which included Stellen Bosch, Swellendan, Cape Town and GraafReinet.
- It accidentally encouraged the spread of Islam through the importation of Moslem slaves from Java into the Cape in order to solve the problem of labour.
- The company successfully controlled trade at the Cape for over 100 years from other European competitors.
- The company was able to solve the labour problems of the Dutch farmers by encouraging the use of African slaves and importation of slaves from Madagascar and Java or Indonesia.
- It led to the birth of a new coloured race when it encouraged intermarriages with the Africans.
- The company transformed the Cape from a mere calling station to a modern town with better recreational facilities.
- The company was able to dismiss the corrupt government officials like Governor Willem Adrian Van der Stel and his property was confiscated.
- The activities of the DEICO later attracted other Europeans like the French, British etc who also wanted to control the prosperous trade at the Cape.
- The company managed to rule the Cape for a long time i.e. for about 142 years without interference from other European powers.
- **What were the achievements of the DEICO by 1795?**
- **THE DECLINE OF THE DUTCH EAST INDIA COMPANY RULE AT THE CAPE BY 1795**
- Why did the DEICO administration collapse by 1795?
- In 1795, the DEICO administration declined and the Dutch lost the Cape colony to the British due to the following reasons;
- Many of the company officials were incompetent or unqualified and therefore lacked the managerial skills to run the company activities.
- The stiff competition and rivalry from the French and British trading companies forced the company out of business and this led to its collapse.
- The company officials diverted a lot of money from trade to administration and this destroyed the company businesses on which the company depended very much.

- The prolonged wars in Europe in the 18th century especially between France and other European powers including Holland were very expensive to the Dutch and therefore the Dutch government could no longer finance the activities of the company.
- The transfer of the European commercial centre from **Amsterdam** in Holland to **London** in Britain led to a fall in the trade profits of the DEICO, which led to its collapse.
- The company involved itself in acquiring colonies which proved very expensive for the company as it drained a lot of the company financial resources.
- The high rate of corruption among the DEICO officials created losses which eventually led to its collapse as a lot of funds were misused.
- The wars with the Africans also drained the company's financial resources and also took a lot of time which led to the collapse of the company.
- The company ran bankrupt because it was heavily indebted to the tune of ten million United States Dollars which weakened the company rule at the cape, leading to its collapse.
- The company's failure to protect the settlers against the hostile African communities like the Xhosa led to its decline because these people hated the company so much.
- The company officials at the Cape were also too harsh towards the settlers which forced them to move into the interior.
- The settlers were also not represented in the company administration and therefore they struggled to manage their own affairs which led to the decline of the company.
- The company put many restrictions on the settlers trading activities. For example, they were not allowed to sell their products to other companies apart from the DEICO. This left the settlers annoyed and uncooperative leading to the decline of the company.
- The Napoleonic Wars or French Wars in Europe made the Cape insecure for trade hence forcing Britain to take it over in 1795.
- The Cape colony had by 1795 become too big to be effectively managed by the weak and corrupt company officials.
- The low salaries paid to the company officials left them with no morale to carry out the company activities, hence leading to the collapse of company rule.
- The technological developments which took place in Britain enabled her to manufacture faster ships than those of the DEICO, hence driving her out of business which led to its collapse.
- The outbreak of internal revolts organized by the settlers who were not happy with the company administration like those in Swellendam and GraafReinet in 1795 weakened the company leading to its collapse.
- The French invasion of Holland in 1793 forced King William IV of Holland to flee to exile in London and this weakened the company, leading to its decline.
- The request by made by King William IV of Holland to the British government to take over the Cape colony because of its financial problems led to the decline of the company.

- The Dutch Defence Council was military weak to stop the British invasion in 1795, hence leading to the collapse of the DEICO.
- **THE DUTCH GOVERNORS AT THE CAPE AND THEIR REFORMS**
- **JAN VAN RIEBEECK**
- **Describe the achievements of Jan Van Riebeeck at the cape**
- **Why is Jan Van Riebeeck remembered in the history of South Africa?**
- **Explain the role played by Jan Van Riebeeck in the establishment of the Dutch colony at the Cape.**
- Jan Van Riebeeck, the founder of the Cape colony was born on 21st April 1619 in **Culemborg** in Holland. He was a son of **Anthanius Van Riebeeck**.
- He was a physician (surgeon) by profession.
- During his youth, he joined the Dutch East India Company and worked for a long time as a company surgeon in Formosa.
- He was a very hardworking and enterprising man.
- He played an important role in the establishment of the Dutch settlement at the Cape and its expansion as explained below;
- He led a group of about 90-130 people (settlers) to the Cape sent by the DEICO to establish a Dutch settlement at the Cape. He arrived at the Cape on 6th April 1652 with three ships.
- He was instructed by the DEICO to start a home or calling station for the Dutch settlers at the Cape.
- Jan Van Riebeeck was the first commandant of the first calling centre and then later the Dutch colony.
- At the Cape, he constructed temporary houses to cater for the accommodation of the Dutch settlers.
- He set up a food production centre at the Cape for the Dutch and he grew vegetables, fruits and wheat to feed the Dutch settlers.
- He imported slaves for the colonists (settlers) from Java, West Africa and Madagascar on the Dutch farms. This solved shortage of labour.
- He encouraged the use of African slaves to provide labour on the settler's farms and homes.
- He built a water reservoir which was large enough to store water for use during the dry season.
- He convinced and encouraged the KhoiKhoi to trade with the Dutch so as to get cattle and fresh meat.
- He later encouraged the raiding of the KhoiKhoi for cattle when they became hostile to the Dutch settlers.
- He encouraged a culture of keeping cattle for domestic slaughter among the Dutch settlers.
- He granted tax holidays i.e. he exempted or excused the first Dutch farmers from paying taxes which helped them to carry out their farming activities smoothly.
- He encouraged a number of expeditions i.e. he sent out scouts so as to boost the Dutch population at the Cape.

- He encouraged intermarriages with the KhoiKhoi so as to solve the problem of homosexuality.
- He founded a modern city of the Cape Town as the capital of the new Cape colony.
- He established a military centre to defend the colony from the hostile Africans.
- He established administrative organs or structures i.e. he streamlined the company administration at the Cape by establishing councils like the council of policy, council of justice, council of defence (security) and the Dutch Reformed Church.
- He convinced the employees of the company to accept and start the process of colonizing South Africa. This resulted into the acquisition of more land by the company which led to the expansion of the settlement.
- He also intervened in the local conflicts between the KhoiKhoi and the Bantu which promoted peace between the two groups.
- He boosted the defence of the Cape colony by forcing many colonists (settlers) to join the Council of Defence.
- He encouraged more settlers to enter South Africa. For example, by 1662 the settlers had increased in number to 250 of which 130 were company servants and the rest were colonists.
- In May 1662, Jan Van Riebeeck left South Africa for Holland and he was succeeded by Wagenaar Zacharias as the commandant of the Cape colony.
- He later died in January **1677** in Jakarta - Indonesia where he was buried.
- **THE FAILURES OF JAN VAN RIEBEECK**
- He encouraged intermarriages between the Dutch and the KhoiKhoi which destroyed their culture.
- He failed to expand the colony at a desirable pace.
- He stopped the Dutch farmers from growing profitable crops like tobacco and restricted them to growing only vegetables and fruits.
- He encouraged enslavement of the Africans in order to provide labour for the Dutch farmers which were against their rights.
- He failed to solve the problems of the Dutch farmers at the Cape.
- He forced the Dutch farmers to give away 20% of their cattle to the company which was an indication of exploitation of the farmers.
- He failed to provide enough security to the Dutch farmers who were frequently attacked by the Africans.
- He kept the prices of the farmers' produce very low which discouraged the Dutch farmers from undertaking large scale commercial farming.
- He forced the Dutch settlers to serve in the company's army so as to defend the company against external threats or attacks.
- **SIMON VAN DER STEL**
- **Describe the achievements of Simon Van der Stel at the Cape between 1679 and 1699.**
- He was the commandant of the Cape colony or settlement between 1679 and 1699 after the rule of Jan Van Riebeeck.
- By the time he took over the Cape colony, it had expanded to include the districts of the Cape and Stellen Bosch.

- Simon Vander Stel tried very much to solve the colony's economic and social problems as noted below;
- He made it easy for the Dutch immigrants to enter the Cape colony so as to increase the number of the Dutch farmers.
- He encouraged the development of the Cape from a mere calling station into a colony.
- He imported orphan girls and prostitutes from Holland for the male Dutch settlers to marry as a reward for their services to the company.
- He gave free land to the Dutch settlers and even encouraged many company officials to resign and become Dutch farmers so as to increase the number of the settlers at the Cape.
- He encouraged the development of agriculture during his term of office by giving the necessary assistance to the Dutch farmers.
- He welcomed 200 French professional progressive farmers (Huguenots) at the Cape who equipped the Dutch farmers with new farming methods. This resulted into increased agricultural production at the Cape.
- Due to his efforts, the population of the Dutch farmers steadily increased at the Cape and this led to the expansion of the Dutch settlement into the interior.
- In 1689, he established a model school in the district of Stellen Bosch.
- In 1669, he retired and he was succeeded by his son Willem Adrian Vander Stel.
- **WEAKNESSES OF SIMON VANDER STEL**
- He did nothing when the food prices went down due to the increased agricultural output following the advice given by the French farmers. This made the farmers to suffer.
- He was accused of awarding trading licenses to only his friends and close associates, ignoring other traders at the Cape.
- He maintained the company restrictions on the consumption of bread, wine, fresh meat by the Dutch settlers by keeping the prices of these items high.
- He restricted the Dutch farmers from growing profitable crops and only limited them to growing vegetables and fruits which were not profitable.
- Many Africans or Black people were enslaved.
- He influenced the appointment of his son Willem Adrian Vander Stel as the Governor of the Cape from 1699 – 1707 yet his son was a very corrupt and bad administrator.
- **WILLEM ADRIAN VANDER STEL, 1699 -1707**
- Why is Willem Adrian Vander Stel remembered in the history of South Africa?
- Willem Adrian Vander Stel was the third governor of the Cape colony.
- He took over from his father Simon Vander Stel in 1669 and ruled up to 1707
- He registered many weaknesses in his administration of the Cape colony than any other Governor as explained below;
- He was a shameless leader whose interest was to acquire wealth as quickly as possible during his term of office as Governor of the Cape colony.
- He violated the company's rules by acquiring large estates of land using his position as Governor of the Cape colony.

- He diverted or changed the company's workers towards developing his own estates instead of doing the company's work and this resulted into the collapse of the company.
- He used or embezzled most of the company's funds for his personal gains and therefore failed to pay the company workers better wages.
- During his reign, many company workers relaxed in their duties, leading to the weakness of the company.
- At his home, he received visitors who brought gifts to him like gold, slaves, copper etc.
- When the prices of the agricultural produce fell he was bribed to favour some people by awarding them monopoly over the supply of meat and wine. This annoyed other farmers which eventually led to the collapse of the company.
- He forced the farmers to give him the best produce of the colony.
- He broke all the existing company laws and controlled $\frac{1}{3}$ of the total wine stocks at the Cape yet the company officials were not allowed to do so.
- By 1705, he had become very unpopular to the extent that the colonists demanded that he should step down which was done in 1707.
- By 1707, Willem Adrian Vander Stel had become so corrupt that him and his close relatives and friends owned a third of the company's land in South Africa.
- Willem and all his corrupt officials were dismissed and all his estates were taken by the government hence he worked for nothing.
- **HIS ACHIEVEMENTS:**
- He built a large hospital at the Cape and this greatly reduced the death rate among the Dutch settlers.
- The defence castle or wall was completed which increased the defence and security of the colony.
- A large water reservoir was completed to be used by the colonists during the dry season.
- He encouraged the expansion of the Dutch Reformed Church which established elementary schools throughout the Cape colony and this reduced on illiteracy.
- **THE KAFFIR WARS OR WARS OF DISPOSSESSION OR THE EASTERN BOUNDARY QUESTION, 1779-1857.**
- The Kaffir wars were racial conflicts between the Xhosa (Bantu) and the Dutch (Boers).
- They were wars fought in South Africa in the 18th century between the Europeans and the Africans.
- They took place at the Eastern side of South Africa, hence the name the 'Eastern boundary question'.
- They were wars fought when the Dutch were trying to chase away (disposes) the Africans from their original land.
- They were fought between the Great Fish river, River Kei and River Keiskama between the Africans and the Dutch (Boers).
- They also involved the British at a later date.
- There were several wars and they took place at different times.

- The 'Kaffir Wars' were also known as wars of dispossession, Xhosa – Boer wars, Bantu- Boer wars and the Eastern Cape frontier wars.
- The Xhosa were led by different leaders and these included Tyali, Rarabe, Macomo, Nanquase, Chief Gaika and Makanda among others.
- The Boer leaders included Piet Retief and Maynier while the British were led by Benjamin Durban, Charles Somerset, Graham and Harry Smith.
- **CAUSES OF THE KAFFIR WARS**
- The expansion of both the Boers and Xhosa led to wars. The Xhosa were expanding South and West wards while the Boers were expanding from the Cape colony North and East wards, hence meeting at the Great Fish River.
- The racial difference between the Bantu and the Boers caused wars as the whites looked at the Africans as inferior people.
- The differences in land ownership between the Xhosa and Boers i.e. the Xhosa believed in communal ownership of land and yet the Boers believed in private ownership, hence leading to conflicts.
- The enslavement of the Africans (Xhosa) by the Boers annoyed the Xhosa, hence leading to wars.
- The poor payment given to the Xhosa labourers caused the Kaffir wars.
- The Boers lived in isolated areas on their individual farms, hence giving a chance for the Xhosa to raid them, thus the Kaffir wars.
- Population increase on both sides resulted into land conflicts, hence leading to the Kaffir wars.
- The lack of proper boundaries and demarcations on the African land forced the Boers to easily enter into African areas, hence leading to wars.
- The Xhosa were unhappy with the way the Boers were taking away or raping their women, hence forcing them to fight against the Boers.
- The desire for fertile soils by both the Boers and the Xhosa resulted into wars since both parties wanted more land for agriculture.
- The Xhosa hated the spread of Christianity in their land by the missionaries since it was an abuse of their traditional religion and this resulted into the Kaffir Wars.
- The long term enmity between the Boers and the Bantu (Xhosa) right from 1652 when the Boers had just settled at the Cape led to the Kaffir wars.
- The Boers never respected the Xhosa traditional leaders. For example, they could punish them in public and this annoyed the Xhosa, hence the Kaffir wars.
- The outbreak of famine due to drought in both the Xhosa and Boer areas forced them to raid or attack each other for food.
- The Boers disrespected the African traditional cultures and values which annoyed the Xhosa, hence forcing them to fight against the Boers so as to defend the traditional values and cultures.
- The Xhosa wanted to protect their independence that was threatened by the foreigners i.e. the Boers and British, hence the Kaffir wars.
- The Xhosa and Boers also fought over cattle ownership, thus leading to constant raids and counter raids by both parties, hence the Kaffir wars.

- The mistreatment of the Xhosa slave workers by the Boers annoyed the Xhosa. For example, they were over worked, starved etc. which forced the Xhosa to fight against their masters, hence the Kaffir wars.
- The role played by the African prophets or diviners like Nanguase and Mlanjeni who encouraged the Africans to rebel by promising to give protection to the Africans against the white man's bullets.
- The able leadership provided by the Xhosa chiefs like Tyali, Rarabe, Graika, Nanguase, Macomo and Mlanjeni who encouraged the Xhosa to fight the whites.
- The entry of the British on the side of the Boers increased the conflicts.
- The rise of the **British imperialism** forced the Xhosa to fight against the British who wanted to control the whole of South Africa.
- Even the recruitment of the KhoiKhoi and Fingo on the side of the whites annoyed the Xhosa, hence the Kaffir wars.
- The British partial solutions that pleased only the Boers led to conflicts. For example, the British went on shifting the boundaries from the Fish River, Keiskama and later Kei favouring only the Boers.
- Some of the wars were fought because of petty or minor issues. For example, the stealing of an axe by a relative of a Xhosa chief from the whites caused the 7th Kaffir war or the 'War of the axe' of 1846.
- The failure of peaceful negotiations between the whites and the Africans led to the Kaffir Wars.
- The Africans (Xhosa) also mistook the Boers for sea monsters or devils which forced the Xhosa to fight against them.
- The role of the British administrators like Durban as well as the war hungry British soldiers like Harry Smith and Colonel Graham made the Xhosa more angry.
- The unfair taxes imposed on the Xhosa by the Boers and the poor collection of these taxes forced the Xhosa to fight against the whites, hence the Kaffir wars.
- The role of the Boer leaders like Piet Retief and Maynier who encouraged the Boers to fight against the Xhosa caused the Kaffir Wars.
- The possession of guns by both the Xhosa and the Boers encouraged wars between the two sides.
- The Africans (Xhosa) also thought that they were militarily stronger after going through the Mfecane period, hence the Kaffir wars.
- **THE COURSE OF THE KAFFIR WARS**
- Explain the course of the Kaffir wars between the 1770s and 1850s.
- The Kaffir wars were a series of wars fought on the Eastern Frontier around the Great Fish River between the Xhosa and the Boers and later the British joined.
- The Kaffir wars were nine in number and they were fought at different times.
- The wars started in 1779 up to 1857 between the whites i.e. Boers and British and the Xhosa (Bantu) who were living on the Eastern Frontier or border of the Cape colony.
- The leaders of the Kaffir wars included Rarabe, Tyali, Macomo, Nanguase etc.
- The Kaffir wars were also referred to as 'wars of dispossession', the Eastern boundary question', 'Battles on the Eastern Frontier' or the 'Boer – Xhosa wars'.

- The first Kaffir war took place from **1779 up to 1781**. This war started when Chief Rarabe of the Xhosa crossed the Great Fish River and invaded the neighbouring Khoi-Khoi village in search for the cattle which had been taken.
- During the raiding, some of the Boer cattle were also taken by the Xhosa. This forced the Boers to open an attack on the Xhosa and drove them back across the Fish River.
- The second Kaffir war took place from **1789 up to 1793** after the Xhosa attempted to expand again across the Fish River up to the Boer areas in the Zuurveld.
- The Boers wanted to chase away the Xhosa from their areas but they were stopped by the government magistrate.
- Later, drought broke out in the area which led to famine. This forced the Boers to attack the Xhosa so as to take away their cattle. The Xhosa counter attacked the Boers and they took away about 60,000 heads of cattle from the Boers which made them victorious in the war.
- The third Kaffir war took place between **1799 and 1803** after the Boers got misunderstandings with the British.
- The Xhosa therefore used the opportunity of the whites conflicting to drive or chase away the Boers from their land (Zuurveld).
- The British helped to organize a counter attack on the Xhosa. The Xhosa were defeated but allowed to remain in the area since the Dutch were to get the Cape back.
- However, the Xhosa were later sent away from the Zuurveld to the East of the Fish River into the Gaika area in an attempt to create a peaceful district for the white occupation in the west of the Fish River.
- The fourth Kaffir war occurred between **1811 and 1812**.
- This war broke out due to overcrowding in the East of the Fish River which led to civil wars between the Xhosa chiefs i.e. **Gaika and Ndhlabi**.
- Chief Gaika was defeated who then appealed for help from the British against Ndhlabi.
- The land was taken away from the Xhosa to create a buffer zone of empty land between the Fish River and the Keiskama River.
- The fifth Kaffir war occurred in **1818 to 1819** when Chief Ndhlabi together with Macomo combined to fight against Chief Gaika.
- Chief Gaika had earlier collaborated with the British which had annoyed his fellow chiefs.
- The British in support of the Boers defended chief Gaika which forced the Boers to displace the Xhosa from their settlements.
- The sixth war occurred in **1834** which was the most disastrous among all the Kaffir wars.
- The Xhosa who had occupied the area between the Great Fish River and River Keiskama started cattle raiding all over the area i.e. they raided not only the Boers but also the Khoi-Khoi and the British.
- They also raided and stole cattle belonging to Tyali who was a son of Chief Gaika (a collaborator of the whites).

- In response, the whites responded by causing misery, burning homes, grabbing and destroying the property of the Xhosa.
- When the war ended, Governor Benjamin Durban took away the land that was between Kei and Keiskama rivers as the new province of **Queen Adelaide**.
- However, this land was later returned to the Xhosa when the missionaries led by Dr. John Phillip protested against the action.
- The seventh Kaffir war occurred between **1846 and 1847**. This was called the **"War of an axe"**.
- It broke out after a relative of a Xhosa chief was arrested by the Boers for stealing an axe.
- When the chief decided to defend the thief, war was declared on the Xhosa by the Boers.
- The British under Sir Harry Smith eventually came in to rescue the situation by conquering the area between the Great Fish River and river Keiskama.
- The eighth war occurred between **1849 and 1850** when the Xhosa decided to attack the British settlers who had occupied their land.
- Before the war, the Xhosa religious leaders like Mlangeni and Nanquase claimed that they could give the Xhosa fighters protection from the white man's bullets.
- The prophecy however did not work as the Xhosa were heavily defeated by the whites.
- The Ninth Kaffir war was fought between the Xhosa and the British.
- It was also known as the Xhosa cattle killing. This was on the advice of a woman diviner known as **Nanquase**.
- Nanquase said that all the cattle should be killed so that the past Xhosa people would rise from the dead and the European would be swept into the sea.
- Most of the Xhosa believed in the prophecy and they obeyed the commands of Nanquase. However, when the promised day came, the dead did not rise and action was taken against the non-believers who were blamed for the failure.
- By **February 1857**, the Xhosa people were starving due to the killing of their cattle and the effects of other wars.
- Finally, due to too much suffering which the Xhosa had been subjected to, they decided to fight so as to regain their lost land from the British.
- **EFFECTS OF THE KAFFIR WARS**
- **What were the effects of the Kaffir Wars on both the Africans and whites?**
- **What impact did the Kaffir Wars have on the people of South Africa?**
- The Xhosa were defeated by the whites.
- The wars led great loss of lives on both sides of the Africans and whites.
- There was **depopulation** due to the many people who were killed.
- Many Africans and whites were wounded during the wars.
- The Xhosa lost their land to the whites.
- There was loss of property on both sides. For example, by the end of the Second Kaffir War, the Boers had lost over 60,000 heads of cattle and more than 5000 animals by the Xhosa.
- Some Africans lost their identity and they were absorbed by the whites.

- The wars made the Africans poor since they had no time to concentrate on economic activities.
- There was misery and suffering among the Africans since they were mistreated by the whites.
- The Africans were enslaved since they were now defeated and weakened.
- The conflicts led to the British settlement in **Zuurveld** and later involved themselves in the administration of the land.
- There was loss of African cultures and traditions after the wars.
- The Xhosa were militarily weakened by the Boers
- There was decline in trade between the Africans and whites.
- Famine breakout due to the decline in agriculture because gardens were destroyed during the course of the wars.
- The Africans lost confidence in their traditional religious beliefs and therefore many converted to Christianity after the wars.
- The Xhosa traditional chiefs lost their power or authority after being defeated by the whites.
- The Africans lost their **political independence** since the British started ruling them.
- The African economic activities were destroyed and therefore they started relying on the whites for survival.
- The Kaffir Wars increased the missionary influence in the interior of South Africa. The missionaries went into the interior to stop the fighting between the Bantu (Xhosa) and the Boers.
- The Boers lost the East Cape Colony to the British who started controlling it.
- The wars led to the increased enmity between the Africans and the Boers, thus leading to other conflicts in South Africa.
- The Africans were displaced to infertile areas where farming was impossible.
- More coloured people were produced from the forced marriages between the whites and the Bantu which increased their population in South Africa.
- The Kaffir Wars paved way for the **Great Trek** which involved the migration of the Boers from the Cape deeper into the interior of South Africa. This was due to the cancellation of the Province of **Queen Adelaide**.
- **STEPS TAKEN BY THE BRITISH TO END THE KAFFIR WARS**
- **What steps were taken by the British to end the Kaffir Wars in South Africa?**
- The Kaffir Wars threatened the Eastern Frontier security for very many years.
- Even the Boers constantly complained of the many Xhosa attacks.
- The British were blamed for failing to stop the wars. As a result, the political and military British officers started intervening into the wars.
- The political leaders included the Colonial Secretary Lord Glenelg, Governors Benjamin Durban, Charles Somerset, Bourke and Grey.
- The military officers included Gradocks, Colonel Graham and Captain Harry Smith.
- The British at first tried peaceful means under Governor Charles Somerset and later Benjamin Durban. These included;

- They set up military forts in the area and sent soldiers to act as barriers between the two fighting groups. The forts were established in the town of Grahams, Beaufort, Hare as well as Peddie.
- Commander Gradocks was posted to the Eastern Frontier to bring about peace.
- The British also tried to convince the fighting groups to stop the wars. For example, they talked to Chief Gaika, a Xhosa chief to control his people.
- They also tried to convince the fighters to return the stolen cattle. For example, they convinced Chief Gaika to return the stolen cows to the Boers.
- However, all these peaceful efforts yielded nothing (failed) which forced the British to use **force**.
- They made the Fish River to be the permanent boundary between the Xhosa and the Boers in order to create a **neutral ground** that would separate the two enemies.
- As a result, over 20,000 Xhosa were forced to leave the area around the Fish River.
- In this land, a new district was created away from the Cape. The new district was called **Zuurveld** or **Albany**.
- The British encouraged the British settlers to settle in the new district of Albany.
- Most of the white settlers were displaced Europeans from the 'Napoleonic Wars' in Europe.
- These new settlers were given incentives like free transport, money and free land
- As a result, over 1000 white settlers moved into the Zuurveld and acted as a barrier between the two enemies.
- The British later tried the "**divide and rule**" policy by allying (making friendship) with Chief Gaika of the Xhosa to fight his fellow Xhosa chiefs.
- Chief Gaika helped the British to arrest and imprison the stubborn Xhosa chiefs like Macomo and Makanda.
- But even the creation of **Albany** district did not bring peace.
- So the British further pushed the Xhosa beyond river Keiskama which resulted into famine in the Xhosa region.
- To reduce on the African anger, the British provided food to Chief Gaika's group during famine.
- They even allowed the Xhosa to graze their cattle in the new neutral zone or district of Albany during the great period of famine.
- But this new measure caused more land problems among the Xhosa which forced them to fight against the British. This led to the 1834 Kaffir War.
- Governor Durban who was the British representative in South Africa responded by pushing the Xhosa beyond river Kei and he created a new district or province. Durban called this new area the **Province of Queen Adelaide**.
- They tried to force the signing of treaties between the two enemies.
- The British created treaty states on the Eastern and Northern sides like Griqua and Pondo.
- The chiefs of these states like Adam Kok, Anderies and WaterBoer were paid a salary to keep peace with their states but due to the high costs that British abandoned the states.

- They even tried using missionaries to calm the Africans and stop the wars.
- But the British missionaries opposed the new land grabbing.
- They were led by the London missionary Society. It was especially Dr. John Phillip who led the way. He appealed to the British parliament which ordered the colonial office to reverse Durban's directive.
- Lord Glenelg, the Colonial Minister in London returned the Xhosa land.
- But the Xhosa were only to take back the land under the following conditions;
- The Xhosa were to remain very loyal to the British laws.
- They were to become British citizens
- They had to give up their weapons
- The British compensated the Boers for their lost cattle and land.
- The British annexed the Boer states of Natal, Orange Free State and Transvaal. This was after compensating the Boers for cattle and land losses failed to produce results. But due to the high costs, the British were forced to recognize the Boer independence.
- The British also set up a new province called the **British Kaffraria** which was to accommodate some of the Boers who had lost their land.
- British judges (magistrates) and police were stationed at the **British Kaffraria** in order to ensure peace and security in the area.
- The British encouraged their administrators not to interfere in the tribal affairs.
- The Xhosa were given reserve land in Transkei province.
- Later, Sir George Grey the new British Governor suggested more administrative reforms to end the Kaffir Wars. For example, he advocated for the federation (Union) of South Africa.
- **WHY THE AFRICANS WERE DEFEATED DURING THE KAFFIR WARS**
- **Why were the Xhosa defeated in the Kaffir Wars?**
- The Xhosa were militarily weak as compared to the Boers who were strong.
- The Africans had inferior weapons like spears and arrows yet the Boers had strong guns.
- The Boers had well trained and skilled armies which they used against the Xhosa.
- The Xhosa had a poor (weak) economy and so they could not sustain the wars against the whites for a long period of time.
- Natural calamities like drought and famine weakened the African fighters since they lacked what to eat.
- The British interest in the area also weakened the Africans since they also ended up grabbing African land.
- The determination of the Boers to establish their control over the Africans forced them to defeat the Xhosa.
- The Xhosa were disunited and therefore they could not join hands against the whites. For example, Chief Gaika collaborated with the whites.
- The brutal (harsh) methods used by the Boers during the wars like destruction of the Xhosa property weakened them further, leading to their defeat.
- The Africans had a psychological feeling that they could never defeat the whites which weakened them against the whites.

- The Xhosa lacked support from their neighbours which left them weaker.
- The Boers had learnt about the African resistances and therefore they were ready to defeat the Africans.
- The **false prophecy** of the African prophets (diviners) like **Mlanjeni** and **Nanquase** who promised the Xhosa immunity (protection) against the white bullets gave them false confidence.
- The Africans lacked training before involving themselves in the wars.
- Some Africans like the **KhoiKhoi** and **Fingo** helped the whites against the Xhosa, hence their defeat.
- **THE BRITISH OCCUPATION OF THE CAPE**
- The British were the second Europeans to occupy the Cape of Good Hope (South Africa) after the Dutch.
- They occupied the Cape twice.
- The British first occupied the Cape between 1795 and 1802 and returned it to the Dutch under the peace treaty of Amiens of 1802 signed between Britain and France under Napoleon I.
- The British occupied the Cape for the second time in 1806 and ruled it up to 1910 when the Union of South Africa was attained.
- **REASONS WHY THE BRITISH WERE INTERESTED IN THE CAPE COLONY BETWEEN 1795 AND 1806**
- Why were the British interested in the Cape colony between 1795 and 1806?
- Why were the British interested in the Cape colony by 1795?
- The formation of the English India Company in 1600 (17th century) cleared way for the occupation of the Cape.
- The British desire to control the profitable Indian trade and its items like spices, opium and silver which were highly demanded in the European markets.
- The collapse of the Dutch East India Company (DEICO) in 1795 paved way for the British intervention and occupation of the Cape since it created an administration vacuum.
- The British wanted to protect the sea route to India through the Cape in order to protect her commercial empire and interest in the Middle East and the Far East.
- The need to overcome the stiff competition from other European powers like Spain, Portugal and Holland made the British to take over the Cape so as to stop them from dominating this trade.
- They were attracted by good natural harbours at the Cape which were suitable for the British merchant ships to anchor or land safely without being disturbed by the strong winds.
- The strategic location of the Cape i.e it was half way the journey between Asia and Europe encouraged the British to take over the Cape from the Dutch.
- The need to obtain revenue for the British by taxing the merchant ships going to India encouraged British to occupy the Cape.
- The British were attracted by the fertile soils which would make the growing of crops easy.

- The desire to establish a calling station or resting place or refreshment point for the sailors from Britain to India made the British to occupy the Cape since the journey from Europe to Asia was too long and tiresome.
- The good climate at the Cape i.e. the Mediterranean type of climate influenced the British to occupy the Cape because it favored human settlement as well as agriculture.
- The industrial revolution in England created the need for raw materials from South Africa. Therefore, the British wanted to get raw materials for their industries.
- There was also the desire to get markets for the manufactured goods from Britain which made the British to develop interest in the Cape since many people had settled at the Cape.
- The desire for prestige or glory made the British to develop interest in the Cape colony. This was because there was a general belief that the more colonies one had abroad, the more respect one would get.
- The British took over the Cape for humanitarian reasons i.e. they wanted to save the Africans from enslavement by the Dutch farmers.
- The British wanted to spread Christianity in order to promote equality and brotherhood among the different races in South Africa.
- The French invasion of Holland in 1793 worried the British and therefore forced them to occupy the Cape before the French could do so.
- They also wanted to use the Cape as a defence post or military base to protect the British against their enemies especially France.
- The British fear that the French or 'Napoleonic Wars' in Europe would spread to South Africa and disorganize her trade led to the British occupation of the Cape.
- The request made by King William IV of Holland to the British government to protect her overseas possessions (territories) including the Cape made the British to take over the Cape. This was because of the good relationship between Holland and Britain.
- The need to protect the British nationals or citizens like farmers and traders who had already settled at the Cape by 1806 led to the British occupation of the Cape.
- It was a period of scramble for Africa and therefore the British were among the imperial powers that wanted to acquire more colonies outside Europe, hence forcing them to occupy the Cape.
- **HOW THE BRITISH OCCUPIED THE CAPE**
- How did the British acquire the Cape from Dutch?
- How did the British occupy the Cape between 1795 and 1806?
- The British occupied the Cape twice.
- The British first occupied the Cape between 1795 and 1802 and then returned it to the Dutch through the peace treaty of Amiens signed in 1802 between Britain and France under Napoleon I.
- The British reoccupied the Cape in 1806 and ruled it up to 1910 when the union of South Africa was formed.
- The British occupation of the Cape was through force or conquest and later through diplomacy by entering into agreements with other European powers like France.

- The British occupation of the Cape came from French invasion of Holland in 1793 during the revolutionary wars between France and the rest of Europe which forced the Dutch King William IV to run to England.
- The Dutch King William IV who had fled to England requested the British Crown or government to safe guard the Dutch overseas possessions including the Cape.
- During this confusion, the DEICO administration collapsed making the Cape colony to have no administration and this forced the British to occupy it in 1795 up to 1802.
- In 1795, the British sent a fleet of war ships and gained control of the Cape from the Dutch.
- During this period, the British did not carry out serious activities because they had just been requested to occupy the Cape colony and therefore they made no reforms or changes.
- In 1802, France and Britain signed the **treaty of Amiens** which restored peace temporarily between the two countries.
- By this treaty, Britain was to withdraw from the Cape and the French forces were to leave Holland which they all accepted.
- The Cape was therefore returned to the Dutch in 1802 and this marked the first British occupation of the Cape.
- Thus, from 1803 to 1805, the Cape was under the Batavian rulers of Holland.
- In 1806, Europe again faced wars caused by France. During these wars, France again invaded and occupied Holland with the help of the Batavian rulers and this action threatened the British commercial interests in the Far East.
- The French invasion of Holland in 1806 worried the British who thought that the French might take over the Cape colony which was strategically located on the sea route to India.
- In 1806 therefore, the British under the leadership of **General Richard Baird** took over the Cape from the Batavian rulers (Dutch).
- In 1815, the Vienna settlement which was signed in Austria officially recognized the British occupation of the Cape in South Africa.
- The Dutch were compensated 700,000 pounds.
- The British stayed at the Cape till the 20th century.
- During this period, very many changes or reforms were introduced at the Cape.
- **THE CAPE UNDER THE BATAVIAN RULE OR REPUBLIC (1803 -1806)**
- Describe the Dutch administration of the Cape between 1803 and 1806.
- Explain the changes that took place at the Cape between 1803 and 1806.
- Describe the achievements of the Batavian rule at the Cape between 1803 and 1806.
- Explain the achievements of Jan Janssens between 1803 and 1806.
- The Batavian Republic was the new Dutch government formed in Holland by revolutionary France in 1793.
- The Batavians took over the Cape after the treaty of Amiens of 1802 signed between Britain and France.
- This treaty demanded that the Dutch Cape colony should be handed over to the Dutch and the process was formalized in 1803 under the Batavian administration.

- The Batavian rulers remained in charge of the Cape from **March 1803** to **1806** when they were removed by the British forever led by General Richard Baird.
- During this time, the Cape was placed under the administration of General **Jan Janssens** who served as Governor.
- General Jan Janssens was assisted in the administration of the Cape by a Commissioner General called **Jacob Demist Abraham**.
- The Governor was the Head of the administration and was given powers to appoint and dismiss the government officials.
- The Governor also made the laws of the colony and settled criminal and civil cases or matters.
- The senior posts in the government were held by the Batavians but the British remained dominant in the lower posts of the civil service.
- The Batavians made reforms in law, freedom of worship, education etc. which made the Cape administration less conservative and smoother. These reforms included;
- The judicial system was reformed and a high court was created. This remained independent from the executive.
- Appointment in courts of law was based on merit unlike before.
- For proper administration, the Cape colony was divided into districts, leading to the formation of local governments.
- Each district had a government representative called a **LANDROST**.
- The landrost acted as a magistrate, settled minor cases, kept peace and also acted as a link between the government and the settlers.
- The landrost was assisted by six leaders when handling the civil cases or matters.
- The districts were further subdivided and each sub-division was headed by a **Veld Kotnot**.
- The Batavian administration promoted agricultural development by introducing new agricultural projects which reduced poverty. For example, the Merino sheep was imported from Spain.
- Trade restrictions were removed and the farmers or settlers were free to trade with other Batavian or Dutch colonies in all crops.
- The Batavian government allowed or extended freedom of worship to all religious groups at the Cape though the Dutch Reformed Church remained outstanding.
- During their rule, the KhoiKhoi got back some of their land which had been taken away by the Dutch settlers and were also treated fairly.
- Slave labour was reduced and the Batavians started encouraging white labour.
- The government promoted formal education and extended equal educational services to all districts in the colony.
- However, during the three years of the Batavian rule the Dutch still regarded the Africans as an inferior race and therefore racial separation continued.
- The Batavian rule was short lived due to the outbreak of war between Britain and France in Europe.
- During this war, the Batavians became friends of the French and enemies of the British, a factor that led to the second British occupation of the Cape in 1806 and this marked the end of the Batavian government at the Cape.

- **REASONS WHY THE BATAVIANS LOST CONTROL OF THE CAPE IN 1806**

- Why did the Batavians lose the Cape after 1805?
- Why did the Batavian rule at the Cape come to an end?
- In 1806, the British sent General Baird with a fleet of 61 warships which brought to an end the Batavian control of the Cape.
- The Batavians lost the Cape due to internal and external factors which included the following;
- The British were stronger than the Dutch. For example the British navy amounted to 61 superior warships which the Dutch could not fight and so they lost the Cape.
- The Batavian rulers lacked a modern army. The army was not facilitated by the administration which was more interested in carrying out reforms in other sectors at the expense of the army.
- The Batavian administration was not so friendly to the Africans and therefore they could not support it in fighting against the British, hence their defeat.
- The Batavians lacked any European ally (friend) because they had openly supported the French during Napoleon I's rule and this led to their defeat by the British.
- The British were determined to conquer and occupy the Cape because the British citizens at home were pressurizing their government to add the Cape on their empire.
- The British wanted to protect the many English citizens like farmers that had already settled at the Cape.
- The British wanted to establish a defence post at the Cape so as to be able to challenge the enemy ships especially those of France.
- The British wanted to turn South Africa into a calling station or refreshment point.
- The British wanted to protect their commercial Empire in the Far East through acquiring South Africa against France under Napoleon I.
- The Batavian government had financially become bankrupt and therefore they could not prevent the British from occupying the Cape.
- The collapse of the treaty of Amiens of 1802 when France invaded Holland in 1805 also encouraged the British to occupy the Cape from the Batavian rulers.
- **THE BRITISH REFORMS OR CHANGES AT THE CAPE (1806-1843)**
- Describe the changes introduced by the British at the Cape between 1806 and 1838?
- Describe the reforms introduced by the British at the Cape up to 1834.
- The British were the **second Europeans to occupy** the Cape of Good Hope or South Africa after the Dutch.
- They occupied the **Cape** twice from **1795-1802** and **1806 – 1910**.
- In **1806**, the British **under General Biard took over** the Cape for the second time.
- Later, they made **reforms** in the Cape colony in the economy, religion (church) language, press, judiciary, administration and the general welfare of the slaves as noted below;
- **Changes (reforms) in the economy or finance**

- These reforms were aimed at improving the chaotic financial and economic situation of the Cape.
- In 1825, the English paper money or pound was introduced hence replacing the Old Dutch Rix dollar which had fallen in value.
- Land reforms were also introduced by the British for example, for one to own land in the colony, had to be bought, surveyed, fenced mapped and documented and therefore one had to obtain a title for it.
- In 1828, the African Land Registration was put in place and the Hottentots (KhoiKhoi) were given back their land.
- The British removed restrictions on trade and therefore freedom of trade was established in the Cape colony. The Dutch farmers were now free to sell their products to any company or traders.
- The government greatly reduced expenditure on the salaries of the civil servants or government officials so as to control inflation.
- The expenditure on public works was also reduced to control inflation in the economy.
- The policy of giving financial assistance to the intending immigrants to the Cape was also stopped by the British as a way of regulating government expenditure.
- **Reforms in religion or church**
- The British extended freedom of worship to all religious groups in the Cape colony.
- The Africans were also given freedom of worship and therefore they were given equality before God.
- Even the Roman Catholic Church members were given the right to worship.
- The influence of the Dutch Reformed Church was reduced as a result of the introduction of the Anglican Church. As a result, the Dutch Reformed Church priests were no longer important in the colony.
- The British government became responsible for paying the salaries and wages of the church leaders (priests) like other civil servants.
- The government officials were stopped from attending the church council meetings or synods.
- **Reforms in language and education**
- The British favoured the policy of Anglicization of the Cape colony i.e. they made the colony more English or British.
- By this policy, English language gradually replaced the Dutch language.
- In 1828, English language was made the official language, hence replacing the Dutch language. Therefore, English was widely spoken in the Cape colony.
- English was to be used in all public places like schools, market areas, courts and parliament which made the Dutch unhappy.
- The teachers who taught English to the students were given rewards to encourage the spread of the language.
- The English education system or curriculum was introduced in the Cape colony and public schools were established in the Dutch settled areas like Stellenbosch, GraaffReinet and other places.

- English was later used in the printing of newspapers and magazines like the “commercial advertiser” the Grahamston Journal” and the “AfrikaanZuid”
- **Reforms in the press**
- The British introduced freedom of the press and therefore the old restrictions were removed and the press was liberalized.
- In April 1828, a liberal law requiring all newspapers to deposit or pay 300 pounds before getting permission was passed. Thus many newspapers were printed both in the English and Dutch languages like the “commercial advertiser” the “Grahamston Journal” and the Afrikaan Zuid”.
- However during the time of Charles Somerset, press censorship was encouraged.
- **Reforms in the judiciary**
- The British legal system or English law was introduced at the Cape. This replaced the old Roman harsh law of the Dutch which believed in “an eye for an eye” and “a tooth for a tooth” system to justice.
- The civil cases remained under the Dutch law but the criminal cases were judged basing on the English law.
- The British introduced the Black circuit or mobile courts in 1812 and in those courts, the Africans worked as interpreters.
- These courts **tried the Boers Masters** and also listened to the African complaints against injustice by their Boer masters.
- Later, the 50th ordinance was introduced in 1828 and it came to be known as the charter of justice.
- The charter contained a number of judicial reforms and a supreme court was put in place.
- All judges were to be appointed by the British government and were supposed to be independent and judge cases in a free and fair way. Therefore, the governor could not dismiss the judge.
- The judges were paid salaries by the British government which appointed them to be in charge of its judicial affairs of the Cape.
- Later, only qualified or professional judges and lawyers were allowed to preside over cases and work in the courts of law.
- Courts sessions or hearings were made public and people were free to attend the court proceedings.
- In 1828, trial by jury was also introduced through the charter of justice.
- **Reforms in administration or government**
- The English governors ruled the Cape like Bourke and Sir Charles Somerset (1814-1826) as well as Benjamin Durban (1834 -1838) who were answerable to the colonial secretary in London.
- In 1825, an advisory council was put in place in the cape colony. It was composed of the governor, chief justice and the colonial secretary.
- The council was to advise the government on administrative issues.
- Later in 1827, some Dutch settlers were allowed to sit on the council i.e. they were given two seats on the council.
- Municipal councils were also setup to run the municipalities or urban centres.

- Later in 1834, the British government introduced the legislative council to replace the advisory council.
- The legislative council had powers to the debate and pass bills and laws in the Cape colony.
- **Reforms in the general welfare of the slaves (slavery)**
- **Charles Somerset** championed the struggle **for the human rights** of the Africans. He therefore introduced **social reforms** in the colony all aimed at stopping slavery and improving the life of the former slaves around the Cape Colony.
- He started by ordering **for the registration of all slaves** in the colony in 1816. Therefore, there was registration of all the slaves in the Cape colony and no one was supposed to be a slave unless he or she was registered.
- The unregistered slaves were declared free men and women.
- He ordered for the reduction in the number of slaves in the colony.
- He set up a slave protector in every district of the colony.
- Slaves were then protected from Boer mistreatment and cruelty.
- The working hours for the slaves were reduced to avoid exploitation by their Boer masters.
- The Christian slaves were given freedom of worship and were therefore allowed to attend church services on Sunday.
- Even Sundays were made resting day for the slaves.
- The slaves were given the right to complain against exploitation by the Boers.
- They were also allowed to ask **for paid employment**.
- They were given the right to choose their bosses for whom to work.
- They were given the rights even to sue their Boer masters in courts of laws in case of mistreatment.
- The slaves were allowed to give evidence in the courts of law against their masters and appeal to the courts of law if they were not paid.
- In 1817, a school for the slave children was established which helped to reduce illiteracy among the Africans.
- In 1817, the 50th ordinance was put in place by the British which restored the civil rights of the slaves (Africans).
- In 1812, the **apprenticeship** code or law was also passed which stated that all slave children born on the Boer farm were to be catered for by their masters for ten years.
- In 1834, there was liberation of slaves or slavery was abolished and therefore became illegal which returned joy and happiness among the slaves.
- The slave masters were promised compensation after abolishing slavery.
- The slaves who wished to remain working for their masters were allowed but they had to be paid.
- The slaves were therefore given more freedom and liberty in the Cape colony by the British.
- **Reforms in Settlement**
- The British encouraged urban settlement and development of **retail shops**.

- **Reforms in games and sports**
- Games such as **crickets, horse racing** and hunting were encouraged or introduced.
- **In conclusion**, the Boers were generally **hurt** by the reforms or the reforms affected the Boers negatively majorly and these effects were social, political, and economic in nature.
- **HOW THE BRITISH REFORMS AFFECTED THE AFRICANS**
- How were the Africans (slaves) affected by the British reforms?
- The Africans gained more freedom and liberty since they were treated as human beings.
- The Africans got back their land from the Boers.
- There was a reduction in the working hours and therefore the Africans got a chance to rest.
- The Africans gained paid employment (jobs), thus improving their standards of living.
- The Africans left the Boer farms where they were harshly treated and opened up their own farms.
- The Africans (slave children) acquired western education from the public schools that were established by the British.
- The Africans were given accommodation and it became expensive for the Boers to retain the African as slaves.
- Freedom of worship was given to the Africans. For example, the slaves were allowed to attend Sunday services.
- The African slaves got registered after **1816** and were freed after **1834**.
- The 50th ordinance restored civil rights and they were declared equal to the Boers or whites.
- The African freedom of movement was restored as the pass laws were abolished.
- The Africans became interpreters in the courts of law and were free to report their Dutch masters for any form of mistreatment.
- The Africans were able to form families and have children since they were given freedom to any without consulting their Dutch masters.
- Many Africans moved to live in towns like Cape Town where they took up new life styles and better standards of living.
- Intermarriages between the whites and the Africans took place which led to an increase in the coloured race.
- The natives and the coloured people at the Cape were brought under the British influence.
- The Africans were allowed to practice farming and also carry out trade with the whites, hence reducing poverty.
- The Africans were given representation in the Legislative council and the House of Assembly. This enabled them to speak out their own problems.
- The Africans were hated more by the Boers and this eventually led the famous Great Trek in **1835** as the Boers started running away from the Cape Colony into the interior of South Africa so as to set up their own governments.

- **HOW THE BRITISH REFORMS AFFECTED THE BOERS (SLAVE MASTERS)**

- The British changes affected the Boers **negatively** leading to the following political, social and economic effects;
- The Boers lost their independence and freedom to the British.
- The Boers lost their land that they had grabbed from the Africans due to the new British land regulations.
- It led the growing enmity between the Boers and the British.
- The reforms led to the increased **Boer nationalism** in South Africa.
- There was undermining of the Boer language after it was replaced by the English language.
- The Boers lost control over their economic activities in South Africa like trade, commerce and agriculture as the British took control of the economy.
- There was loss of revenue, thus leading to poverty among the Boers.
- The Boer currency (Dutch rix dollar) lost value and was replaced by the paper money (pounds).
- The Boers lost their privileged position and superiority as they were made equal to the Africans by the British.
- The Boers lost slave labour on their farms as the Africans were free to get paid employment anywhere.
- The Boers lost money due to the unfair compensation for the loss of slave labour.
- The Boers were raided by the Africans since the British stopped protecting them against the Africans. Therefore, the Boers fought many wars with the Africans.
- The Dutch legal system was replaced by the British legal system where every one was equal before the law.
- There was loss of valuable property like cattle by the Boers.
- The influence of the Dutch Reformed Church at the Cape declined as it was replaced by the British missionaries.
- The Boers lost control over education since it was given to the missionaries by the British government at the cape. This made the Dutch to remain backward in terms of education.

- **THE REACTION OF THE BOERS TO THE BRITISH REFORMS AT THE CAPE**

- How did the Boers react or respond to the British reforms at the Cape?
- The reaction of the Boers was negative i.e. the Dutch (Boers) did not welcome the new British reforms.
- The Boers disliked the British legal system which gave equality to all people including the non-whites before the law.
- The Boers disliked the provision of education to the Africans by the British missionaries.
- The Boers opposed the policy of promoting equality between the whites and Africans.
- The Boers hated the introduction of English as an official language because it undermined the Dutch language.
- The Boers were not happy with the introduction of the black circuit courts because they wanted to continue mistreating the Africans.

- They opposed the introduction of work contracts between the masters and African servants since it prevented them from exploiting cheap labour.
- They opposed the British administrators for demanding a lot of taxes yet they were not providing enough services.
- They complained about the Dutch rix dollar and its replacement with the British pound.
- The Boers opposed the freedom of worship granted to all the people at the Cape including the Africans.
- The Boers opposed the British land policies which prevented them from acquiring more land while enabling the Africans to recover their stolen land.
- The Boers opposed the abolition of pass documents put on the Africans since they never wanted to move without permission.
- The abolition of slavery in **1834** annoyed the Boers who had lost their slaves, thus denying them a chance to get free labour.
- The Boers hated the missionary teachings of brotherhood and equality which had made them to be equal to the Africans.
- The Boers lost their economic status since they could no longer exploit the African resources freely.
- The Boers finally resolved to migrate into the interior of South Africa in protest against the British reforms which came to be known as the Great Trek.
- **THE BLACK CIRCUIT COURTS**
- These were **mobile African courts** set up in **1816** to control the Boer mistreatment of the blacks.
- The black circuit courts moved from village to village handling cases raised by the African slaves who were mistreated.
- The charge sheets were always drafted with the assistance of missionaries especially Van Der Kemp.
- Some Africans served as interpreters in these courts which helped them to serve the interests of the Africans.
- **REASONS FOR THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE BLACK CIRCUIT COURTS:**
- To deal with the Boer injustice (unfairness) towards African slaves.
- To empower the African slaves with more freedom.
- They were formed to listen and answer African complaints against the harsh Boer masters.
- To end the racial conflicts or tension between the Boers and the Africans and enable them to accommodate one another.
- They were formed to fight for equality of all people before the law.
- They were formed to end the Boer exploitation of the African slaves.
- They were set up to ensure that the African labourers are paid better salaries.
- They were set up to promote African dignity or respect.
- They were formed to enable the African slaves choose their masters or employers to work for.
- They were formed to provide equal trade opportunities between the whites and the blacks (Africans)

- They were formed to assist the Africans get back their land that had been stolen by the Boers.
- They were formed to ensure that the slave children got education.
- They were formed to protect and accommodate the run away slaves.
- They were formed to give the Africans freedom of movement by removing the pass laws.
- **EFFECTS OF THE BLACK CIRCUIT COURTS**
- The slave working hours were reduced and Sunday was recognized as a day for resting.
- The Africans were able to select their masters/employers.
- The Africans enjoyed better working conditions which improved their status.
- The Africans were given freedom of worship
- The Africans managed to obtain paid jobs on the white man's farms.
- The African rights and freedoms were restored as they were considered equal to the whites.
- The African children were able to join schools and obtain education.
- There was rural –urban migration of the Africans as they wanted to acquire better paid jobs in towns.
- Registration of slaves was arranged and encouraged by the Africans.
- The Africans got back their dignity (respect).
- The Africans were able to regain back their land which had been taken away by the Boers.
- Slavery was abolished in 1834 and the Africans were liberated from suffering.
- The Boers were greatly affected after losing African labour and they decided to organize the Great Trek in the 1830's.
- **THE 50TH ORDINANCE OF 1828**
- What factors led to the passing of the 50th ordinance of 1828
- The 50th ordinance was passed by Governor **Bourke** in **1828** in the influence of the missionaries as a law aimed at changing the life the slaves at the Cape.
- It was also strongly supported by Dr. John Phillip, a missionary and defender of African rights.
- It was to give the Hottentots and other free persons at the Cape the same rights as the whites.
- **REASONS WHY IT WAS PASSED**
- The pressure from the missionaries especially from the London missionary society led by Dr. John Phillip and Vander Kemp. These condemned the slavery attitudes of the whites.
- The growth of the humanitarian bodies which campaigned for equality among the races.
- The role of people like **Clarkson** and **William Wilberforce** who campaigned for the respect of human rights was also important.
- The shopping of slave trade in the British Empire put the British at the fore front of fighting for African rights.

- The role played by the Aborigines committee which was formed by the liberal British parliament to handle African affairs.
- The passing of the 49th ordinance earlier on by the British that had allowed the Africans East of Keiskamma to come in the Cape as contract workers was another reason.
- The British wanted to restore full rights to the Africans in South Africa for example;
- It was passed to allow Africans freedom of movement that had been taken away by the Boers.
- It was passed to allow Africans to own land.
- It was passed to provide justice to all people including the Africans.
- It was passed to provide equal trade opportunities to all people including the Africans.
- The British wanted to end Boer exploitation of the African labour.
- It was passed to provide protection to the African slaves.
- It was intended to end the Boer harshness towards the Africans and to create brotherhood between the Boers and Africans.
- In conclusion, the law was warmly welcomed by the Khoikhoi.
- **EFFECTS OF THE 50TH ORDINANCE**
- The Africans were protected from the Boer masters.
- They were given equal trade opportunities
- The Africans acquired their land back.
- The Africans became happy after gaining their land back.
- The Africans were given freedom of movement.
- The Africans were given a chance to choose the people they wanted to work for.
- The Africans were given equal rights with the white (Boers).
- The Africans enjoyed better working conditions.
- The Africans got paid jobs for example as court interpreters.
- It led to the abolition of slavery later.
- The African working hours were reduced.
- **LORD/GOVERNOR CHARLES SOMERSET (1814-1826)**
- How did Charles Somerset improve the status of the Africans at the Cape between 1814 and 1826?
- Charles Somerset was born in **1767** in England in the town of Badminton to Henry Somerset the 5th Duke of Beaufort.
- He started his career as a soldier and later he became the British Cape governor or administrator from 1814-1826.
- He was a sympathetic administrator towards the slaves at the Cape especially the coloureds and the Khoikhoi.
- He decided to introduce a number of reforms in order to make their lives better.
- He first ordered for the registration of all slaves at the Cape in 1816.
- He also proposed that all slaves that had not been registered be left free.
- He put a register for slaves in every district to document all the existing slaves into district and the slaves who had not been registered were declared free men.

- In 1817, Somerset established a school for the African slave children to enable them acquire formal education.
- He also reduced the working hours for slaves.
- The African slaves were granted a resting day on Sunday to enable them attend prayers.
- He also established Black Circuit courts to investigate the African complaints against their Dutch masters.
- He influenced the Dutch farmers to provide better working conditions to the slaves at the Cape.
- He restored hope to the freed slaves and made arrangements for them to obtain protection.
- He promised compensation to the Dutch masters for the loss of cheap labour.
- He encouraged mixed marriages between the Africans and whites especially the Boers who had rejected it for a long time.
- He asked the Boers to return the African land which they had grabbed at the beginning.
- He encouraged liberty and brotherhood among the African communities.
- He abolished the pass system to enable the African slaves more freely wherever they wanted.
- He encouraged the Africans to seek for paid employment and he promised them protection against the cruel harsh Dutch masters.
- He supported the passing of the 50th ordinance which gave the Africans freedom by restoring their civil rights.
- He attempted to solve the conflicts on the eastern boarder between the Boers and the Xhosa through peaceful means. For example, he separated the Xhosa from the Boers through a clear boundary.
- He ordered for the hanging of a Boer farmer and four other Dutch masters after they had refused to appear before a black circuit court. This incident was described as the **Slatchers Nek Incident** of 1816.
- In 1826, Lord Somerset was recalled to London and by 1834, Sir Benjamin Durban was appointed governor of the cape up to 1838.
- He also suppressed a rebellion organized by the Boers over the killing of their people.
- **GOVERNOR BENJAMIN DURBAN (1834 – 1838)**
- He governed the Cape from 1834 to 1838.
- He was mainly concerned with organizing the Frontier security to stop the Kaffir Wars.
- He sent a missionary Dr. John Phillip to the Xhosa to arrange for Durban's meeting with them.
- He supervised the abolition of slavery in 1834.
- To reduce on the tension in the colony, he allowed the Boers to keep the freed slaves as apprentices (trainers) and allowed the apprenticeship period not to exceed six years.
- He also arranged for the compensation of the Boers for the loss of their slaves.

- He got so much devoted to the abolition of slavery to the extent that he almost forgot about the Frontier Wars, thus making the Xhosa to feel abandoned which forced them to attack the Boers.
- Due to this, he was forced to push the Xhosa beyond River Keiskama and gave the land between river Keiskama and river Kei to the Boers as compensation.
- He even led them in their war against the Xhosa in 1834.
- He introduced local government institutions like municipal councils at the Cape.
- He reduced government expenditure thus reducing the dependence burden of the cape colony.
- He also laid a solid constitutional foundation for the cape.
- His generous policy of giving the Boers land that belonged to the Africans made him popular among the Boer colonists.
- He encouraged many missionaries to go to the Xhosa areas to negotiate for peace.
- **THE GREAT TREK OR AFRIKANER OR BOER EXODUS (1835 – 1845)**
- The Great Trek was a large scale or mass movement of the Boers from the Cape Colony to the interior of South Africa.
- The Great Trek is also historically known as the **Afrikaner Exodus** or **Boer migration** which took place between 1835 and 1845 (1830's – 1840's).
- It can also be defined as a **general Boer negative** reaction against the liberal British reforms at the Cape.
- The Boer trekkers started off their journeys from the areas of Graaff Reinet, Uitenhage and Grahamstown in 1835.
- The Trekkers moved at different periods under different groups and leaders such as **Louis Trigardt, Jan Van Rensburg**, Andries Pretorius, Sarel Celliers, Gerrit Maritz, Hendrick Portigeiter and Piet Retief.
- It was called the Great Trek because it constituted an episode of great historical significance in the history of South Africa.
- The Great Trek involved more than 14,000 Boers who moved from the Cape Colony into interior of South Africa.
- **CAUSES OF THE GREAT TREK**
- What led to the Afrikaner Exodus in 1835?
- Explain the causes of the Great Trek?
- Why did the Boers migrate from the cape into the interior of South Africa?
- The causes of the Great Trek were both long term and short term.
- There was plenty of unoccupied or vacant land in the interior of South Africa which encouraged the Boers to move into the interior to occupy the free land.
- The Boers were nomadic pastoralists who moved from one place to another looking for water and pasture for their animals, hence their migration.
- The Boers had love for adventure as they wanted to discover new areas that existed beyond their homeland.
- Some migrated because it was fashionable i.e. during those days, it was **fashionable** to move and therefore they had to move into the interior.
- The need for fertile soils in the interior i.e. the Cape soils had become infertile and dry, hence forcing them to migrate into the interior.

- They were also looking for favourable climate that would favour their economic activities like agriculture.
- The population at the Cape had increased which led to pressure on the land and therefore the Boers migrated looking for new areas of settlement.
- The role played by the scouts like **Erasmus** who had surveyed the interior also influenced the Boers to migrate into the interior.
- The Boer racial prejudice inspired the Boers to migrate since they believed they were God's chosen race and therefore they never wanted to mix up with the Africans.
- The **Mfecane crisis** or trouble had created a vacuum in the interior of South Africa especially in Natal which attracted the Boers to settle there.
- The Boers wanted to get independence from the British and establish their independent republics or homes away from the British interference.
- The Boers wanted to preserve their traditions and cultures which forced them to migrate into the interior.
- The long term enmity between the Dutch and the British forced the Boers to migrate into the interior.
- The rebellious nature of the Boers forced them to migrate into the interior of South Africa.
- The Boers were annoyed because of **Anglicanisation** of the Cape i.e. making the Cape Anglican which led to a reduction of the influence of the Dutch Reformed Church where by its ministers became civil servants.
- The introduction of the **British legal system** at the Cape i.e. the *English Laws* replaced the *Dutch Laws* which annoyed them, hence forcing them to migrate into the interior.
- The introduction of English as the official language which replaced the Dutch language annoyed the Boers, hence the Great Trek.
- The introduction of the British or **English Pound** which replaced the **Dutch Rix Dollar** annoyed the Boers, hence forcing them into the Great Trek.
- The British liberal policies that emphasized equality, brotherhood and liberties annoyed the Boers, thus leading to the Great Trek.
- The Boers hated the British education system and hence they moved away from the Cape.
- They were also unhappy with the apprenticeship Code that allowed the African children that were born on the Boer farms to be educated by the Boer masters.
- The British had also failed to provide protection (security) to the Boers against attacks from the Africans which forced them to migrate into the interior.
- The freedom of the press introduced by the British where by the new reporters wrote many bad things about the Boers also annoyed them, hence leading to the Great Trek.
- The registration of all slaves at the Cape that was introduced by the greatly annoyed the Boers, hence leading to the Great Trek.
- The Boers hated the British policy of allowing the Africans (slaves) to get paid jobs or employment.

- The Boers hated the removal of the passes by the British which gave freedom of movement to the Africans.
- The introduction of the Black Circuit Courts in **1812** which gave the Africans powers to report or sue their cruel Boer masters annoyed the Boers, hence the Great Trek.
- The **Slacher's Nek Incident** of 1815 – 1816 in which the ring leaders of the Boers who were rebelling were hanged by the British caused the Great Trek because the remaining Boers could not wait to be hanged.
- The passing of the 50th Ordinance of 1828 which restored the civil rights of the non-whites was hated by the Boers, hence the Great Trek.
- The decision taken by the British at the Cape to reduce the salaries of the Dutch officials annoyed the Boers, hence the Great Trek.
- The influence of the British missionaries in South Africa caused the Great Trek. For example, they preached equality of all races as well as brotherhood.
- The missionaries also provided education to the Blacks or Africans which annoyed the Boers because it made the Africans stubborn and arrogant, hence forcing them into the Great Trek.
- The missionaries also provided protection or accommodation to the run-away slaves as their mission stations became homes for the run-away slaves which also annoyed the Boers.
- They also moved because the missionaries were marrying the Africans. For example, Van Der Kemp married a fourteen year old **Malagasy** slave girl.
- The Boers also hated the policy of giving the Africans freedom of worship. For example, the Africans were free to attend church services on Sunday.
- The British new land reforms like mapping, surveying, fencing, renting and documentation of the land greatly upset (annoyed) the Boers, hence forcing them to move.
- The failure by the government to provide enough social services to the Boers like transport, education and security annoyed them, hence forcing them to migrate.
- The removal of trade restrictions or trade liberalization by the British greatly hurt the Boers since the Africans were now free to sell their products to any company or any one.
- The abolition of slavery in South Africa in **1834** by the British annoyed the Boers since they lost cheap labour and yet they were not adequately compensated by the British.
- The four rumours that prevailed for example that the British were going to force the Boers to intermarry with the Africans, serve in the army forcefully, leave (abandon) their Dutch Reformed Church and lose all the land to the Khoi-khoi scared them, hence forcing them to migrate.
- The role provided by the able leaders like Louis Trigardt, Jan Van Rensburg, Hendrick Portigeiter, Piet Retief and Gerrit Maritz among others inspired many trekkers to move, hence the Great Trek.
- The loss of land by the Boers around the Province of Queen Adelaide (between Keiskama and Fish rivers) which was returned to the Xhosa during the Kaffir Wars annoyed the Boers, hence the Great Trek.

- **THE COURSE OF THE GREAT TREK (Leave a space of half a page and fix the map provided to you)**
- **THE COURSE OF THE GREAT TREK**
- Describe the course of the Great Trek up to 1840's
- Explain the movement of the Boers between 1853 and 1845
- Describe the migration and settlement of the Boers from the Cape into the interior of South Africa.
- The Great trek started in the Cape colony and it took place between the 1830's and 1840's.
- The Boers migrated from the Cape Colony into the interior of South Africa in three major groups led by different leaders in different years.
- Among the great trek leaders included Louis Trigardt, Jan Van Rensburg, Hendrick Portgeiter, Sarel Celliers, Piet Retief and Gerrit Maritz.
- The Boers left the Cape using Ox-wagons to carry all their properties into the interior.
- The trekkers avoided the coastal areas and followed the middle grassland (veld) west of the Drakensberg Mountains.
- The first group to leave the Cape Colony was led by **Louis Trigardt** and **Jan Van Rensburg**.
- They left the Cape in **November 1834** from the district of Graaf Reinet.
- They moved eastwards and then northwards crossing River Orange and River Vaal.
- The members of this group were few in number and they left the Cape unprepared for the difficulties ahead of them. As a result, most of them died on their way.
- They proceeded up to Zoutpansberg in Northern Transvaal and they tried to settle along river Limpopo where the Africans killed most of them.
- Other members lacked enough food and others were killed by the tropical African diseases.
- It is therefore not surprising that out of the 100 trekkers who left the Cape in the first group only 27 survived.
- The survivors decided to continue with their journey until they reached **Maputo port** in Mozambique.
- The second group which was the largest, left the Cape colony in **1836**. This group was led by **Hendrick Portgeiter** and **Sarel Celliers**, and they continued their journey north wards.
- They were later joined by **Gerrit Maritz** from Graaf Reinet and they moved east wards towards the Ndebele kingdom which was headed by **Mzilikazi**.
- Before entering the Ndebele Kingdom, they tried to settle along River Orange but failed due to the hostile African tribes.
- When they entered the Ndebele kingdom, Mzilikazi organized his fighters and attacked this group in the village of Vegkop and many of the Boers were killed.
- The Boer trekkers were also prepared for war and therefore in **October 1836**, the Boers fought with the Ndebele in the ***Battle of Vegkop of 1836***.
- The Boers were able to defeat the Ndebele by 1837 and Mzilikazi and his people fled north wards into the present day Zimbabwe.

- The victorious Boers decided to establish a new state or republic in the area which they named **Orange Free State**.
- The third group was led by **Piet Retief** and it was the last group of the Boer trekkers out of the Cape colony.
- They moved North East wards and in **1837**, they reached Zulu land where they asked for land from the Zulu leader called **Dingane**.
- Dingane promised to give them land on condition that the Boers recovered the Zulu cattle that had been stolen by his neighbor **Sekonyera**, chief of the **Tlokwa** kingdom.
- Piet Retief managed to trick Sekonyela and easily recovered the stolen cattle.
- This action greatly surprised Dingane and therefore he made plans for Piet Retief to be killed.
- Dingane organized a beer party at his capital and invited Piet Retief and some of his colleagues as a way of thanking them.
- While at the party, Dingane killed Piet Retief and all his colleagues after ordering his men to 'kill the Wizards'.
- The remaining Boers elected **Andries Pretorius** as a new Boer leader after the death of Piet Retief.
- Andries Pretorius organized a war of revenge for the death of Piet Retief and in **October 1838**, they attacked and defeated the Zulu warriors on the banks of **River Ncome**.
- Many Zulu warriors were killed and dumped in River Ncome which made the waters of the river to turn red because of the blood.
- This battle was later named the **Battle of Blood River of 1838**.
- The Zulu lost the battle to the Boers with the help of Mpande who was Dingane's brother.
- Dingane was overthrown and fled to Swaziland where he was killed by the Swazi warriors and therefore his brother Mpande become the new king of the Zulu Kingdom.
- After defeating the Zulu, the Boers decided to establish their new republic or state called Natal and they ordered the Africans to leave.
- **THE SUMMARY OF THE GREAT TREK**

GROUP	LEADERS	AREAS OCCUPIED	BATTLES FOUGHT	AFRICANS	AFN LEADERS
1 st Group Nov 1834	Louis Trigardt, Jan Van Rensburg	Northern Transvaal, Vaal river, Limpopo Valley and Port Maputo	NONE	AFRICANS LIVING IN LIMPOPO VALLEY	NONE
2 ND Group JULY 1835	Portigeiter, Gerrit Maritz, Sarel Celliers	R.Vaal, R. Orange, Orange Free State	Vegkop	Ndebele	Mzilikazi

3 RD Group OCT1836	Piet Retief, Andries Pretorius	Natal, Tugela, R. Ncome, R.Donga Umzimvubu	Blood River	Zulu	Dingane
----------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---	-------------	------	---------

• **PROBLEMS FACED BY THE BOER TREKKERS**

- What problems did the Boer trekkers face during their journey to the interior?
- Diseases like malaria and sleeping sickness attacked and killed many Boer trekkers and this slowed down their movement.
- They faced a problem of geographical barriers like mountains, rivers and lakes which could not easily be crossed.
- There was shortage of food which resulted into the death of many Boer trekkers.
- They faced resistances from the hostile African tribes like the Ndebele and Zulu. This resulted into wars like the Battle of Vegkop of October 1836 and the Battle of Blood River of December 1838.
- They were attacked by wild animals which either injured or killed them. Lions and hyenas also killed their livestock or animals.
- Communication especially with those at the Cape became difficult as the Boers moved into the interior.
- The Boers had inadequate weapons and gun powder especially after fighting the Battle of Vegkop of 1836.
- The Boers also lost their prominent leaders like Piet Retief who was killed by Dingane.
- There was shortage of supplies like medicines by the Boer trekkers which made them to lose their lives.
- The unfavorable climate in the interior especially during heavy rains and drought season affected the Boers since they were not used to such climatic conditions.
- Language barrier was another problem because many Boer trekkers did not understand the African languages.
- The Boers lost their property like cattle and sheep during the Great trek due to the African raids in the interior.
- The Boers trekkers suffered from homesickness because they were far away from their country Netherlands.
- The Boers lacked the geographical knowledge of the interior of South Africa. For example, they did not know what crops grew well on the soils of the new lands.
- They lacked enough funds to facilitate their day today activities as they moved into the interior.
- There was disunity among the Boer trekkers which was brought about by internal quarrels.
- The long tiring journeys made their movement difficult as the Boers always travelled eight kilometers per day.
- Their children lacked good education because there were no schools in the interior of South Africa.

- They faced a problem of the British who kept on following them into the interior, leading to further conflicts. For example, they later annexed the republics of Natal and Transvaal from the Boers.
- **EFFECTS OF THE GREAT TREK ON THE AFRICANS AND THE BOERS**
- How did the Great Trek affect both the Africans and whites?
- The Great Trek left negative and positive effects on the people of South Africa.
- **EFFECTS ON THE BOERS**
- It resulted into the formation of new Boer Republics in the interior of South Africa which were independent like Natal, Orange Free State and Transvaal.
- It increased the enmity between British and the Boers which later led to wars between the British and the Boers like the First Anglo – Boer War of 1880-1881, the Jameson Raid of 1895 and the Second Anglo-Boer War of 1899-1902.
- The Boers lost their property in the course of the Great Trek like wagons, tents and cattle.
- The Boers lost their lives during the Great Trek especially due to the wars that were fought by the Boers and the Africans for example in the Battle of Vegkop of 1836.
- The British kept on following up the Boers the Cape into the interior of South Africa.
- There was introduction of modern or commercialized farming in the interior. For example, plantation crops such as coffee, sugar and cotton were grown at the coast.
- The Boers lost contact with their friends at the Cape since they all migrated to the interior of South Africa without going back.
- The British later annexed (occupied) the Boer republics like Natal in 1843, Orange Free State in 1848 and Transvaal in 1877 which greatly annoyed them.
- The number of the whites in the interior of South Africa increased after the migration of the Boers.
- It resulted into the increased **Boer nationalism** (desire for independence and pride) after their migration into the interior of South Africa.
- Some of the Boer leaders lost their lives during the Great Trek. For example, Piet Retief was killed by Dingane, the Zulu leader.
- It led to the discovery of minerals in the interior of South Africa by the Boer trekkers. For example diamond was discovered in 1867 and Gold in 1884 in the Boer republic of Transvaal.
- It enabled the Boers to get cheap labour from the Africans in the interior that they used to develop their farms.
- It led to the rise of strong Boer leaders like **Andries Pretorius** and **Paul Kruger** who helped to promote the Boer interests in South Africa.
- **EFFECTS OF THE GREAT TREK ON THE AFRICANS**
- It led to endless wars between the Africans and the Boers like the Blood River Battle of 1838 and the Battle of Vegkop of 1836.
- The Africans lost their lives in the Great Trek wars.
- There was depopulation as many Africans were killed due to the wars fought by the Boer Trekkers.

- The Africans lost their properties like cattle and crops due to the wars fought by the Boers trekkers. For example, Dingane lost 19,000 herds of cattle.
- Some African leaders were exiled and subsequently lost their lives in the process of the Great Trek for example, Dingane, the Zulu leader.
- The Africans lost their lands to the Boers for example the Zulu, the Ndebele, the Pedi, and the Swazi.
- It led to the spread of European disease like sexually transmitted diseases and tuberculosis to the Africans due to the forced intermarriages between the Boers and the Africans.
- The Africans became dependant on the Boers for employment after losing their land.
- There was wide spread of poverty as the Africans were paid little or nothing for their labour by the Boers.
- The Africans acquired guns from the Boer trekkers after collaborating with the Boers for example Mosheshe of the Sotho, Mpande of the Zulu and the Tlokwa chiefs.
- African traditional cultures were destroyed by the Boers after introducing their western cultures like religion, language and dressing.
- The Africans were displaced by the Boers trekkers for example the Ndebele, the Sotho, and the Zulu.
- The Africans were sent to reserves. In such areas, they lived a miserable life full of diseases, starvation, overcrowding and death.
- The African technology declined or disappeared as they learnt western technology from the Boers like carpentry.
- The Boers started interfering in the politics of the Africans.
- There was decline in agriculture since Africans spent much of their time fighting with the Boers.
- The African languages were put into writing by the Boers.
- The African chiefs lost their traditional powers and authority to the Boers for example Dingane of the Zulu and Mzilikazi of the Ndebele.
- The Africans lost their independence to the whites.
- The Africans became second class citizens in their own country.
- The Boers started enslaving the Africans in the interior on their farms and homes.
- It led to racial segregation or discrimination in the interior by the Boers which laid a foundation for the Apartheid policy in South Africa which affected the African greatly.
- It led to insecurity in the interior of South Africa because of the wars between Africans and the Boers.
- It opened up the interior of South Africa for European settlement and exploitation of African resources like minerals.
- The Africans learnt new methods of farming like commercial farming from the Boers which later improved their economy.
- In conclusion, the Great trek was a turning point in the history of South Africa. This was because it influenced more Europeans to enter into the interior who later contributed to the development of South Africa.

- **THE GREAT TREK WARS OR BATTLES**

- **THE BATTLE OF VEGKOP OF 1836**

- It was one of the Great trek wars.
- It was fought between the Boer trekkers of the second group and the Ndebele during the course of the Great trek.
- It was fought on the **19th of October 1836**.
- The Ndebele were led by their King Mzilikazi, while the Boers were led by Hendrick Portgieter, Sarel Celliers and the Gerrit Maritz.
- The war was started by the Boers after the Ndebele refused to give them land for settlement
- The war took place at Marico Quarry between Vaal and Orange Rivers (Vegkop village).

- **CAUSES OF THE BATTLE OF VEGKOP OF 1836**

- What are the causes of the Battle of Vegkop of 1836?
- Why did the Boers conflict with the Ndebele in 1836?
- What were the causes of the conflict between Mzilikazi and Hendrick Portgieter in 1836?
- The determination of the Ndebele to defend or maintain their independence forced them to fight the Boers in 1836.
- The Ndebele were naturally warriors i.e. they were war-like which encouraged them to resist the Boers.
- The Boers were struggling to acquire land which forced them to attack the Ndebele, hence causing the battle.
- The two groups (Boers and Ndebele) had large numbers of cattle which attracted them to raid each other, hence the war.
- The leaders of the Ndebele had registered earlier success in fighting the foreigners which encouraged them to fight the Boers.
- The killing of the earlier Boers missionaries forced the Boers to fight a war of revenge. For example, Erasmus who was a Boer missionary had been killed by the Ndebele.
- The Ndebele called the Boers 'Wizards' which annoyed them, hence causing war.
- The Boers were confident of defeating the Ndebele because they had enough weapons to fight the Ndebele.
- The support given to the Boer trekkers by the **Barolong** chief called **Moroka** encouraged the Boers to fight the Ndebele under Mzilikazi.
- The Ndebele had arrested and kidnapped three American missionaries and some Boers, whom the Boers wanted to rescue through the use of force, hence leading to war.
- The Boers were confident with their military tactic of the 'Laager System' which could enable them to defeat the Ndebele easily.
- The Great trek which made many Boers to go close to the Ndebele caused the war.
- The act of assembling the Boer commandos in the Ndebele land threatened Mzilikazi, hence forcing him to fight them.

- **EFFECTS OF THE BATTLE OF VEGKOP OF 1836**

- What were the effects of the Battle of Vegkop of 1836?
- The Ndebele were defeated which led to the loss of independence of the Africans to the Boers.
- It led to the loss of lives among the Ndebele since many Ndebele warriors were killed during the war.
- There was destruction of property among the Ndebele people especially gardens and houses.
- The Ndebele lost over 10,000 heads of cattle to the Boers.
- The Ndebele were displaced from their cradle land and pushed up to present Zimbabwe.
- It led to the decline of economic activities such as trade and commerce.
- There was decline in agriculture which led to famine since the crops were destroyed during the war.
- The war caused a lot of suffering to the Africans who were defeated.
- The war led to poverty among the Ndebele due to the destruction of property that it caused.
- The three American missionaries were eventually released by the Ndebele after the war.
- The Boers were able to recover some of their lost cattle and ox-wagons from the Ndebele.
- The Boers gained confidence in using the 'Laager System' in fighting against the Africans and they were later to use it against the Zulu.
- The battle increased the **Boer nationalism** or desire to be independent after defeating the Ndebele.
- Some of the Boers lost their lives since they were killed by the Ndebele for example Erasmus and Jan Van Rensburg.
- It led to the creation of a new Boer republic or state of Orange Free State.
- It increased the hatred between the Boers and the Ndebele since the Ndebele were not happy with the Boer settlement in their land.
- **THE BATTLE OF BLOOD RIVER, 1838**
- It was one of the Great trek wars and it was fought between the **Zulu** and the **Boers**.
- It was fought on **16th December 1838** between river **Donga** and river **Ncome** (Blood River).
- The Zulu were led by their **king Dingane** while the Boers were led by **Andries Pretorius**.
- The battle was fought by the third group of the Boer trekkers who were revenging for the death of their leader Piet Retief.
- **CAUSES OF THE BATTLE OF BLOOD RIVER OF 1838**
- What were the causes of the battle of Blood River of 1838
- Why did Dingane conflict with the Boers in 1838?
- What led to the Boer-Zulu war of 1838?
- The Zulu wanted to protect their ancestral land from the Boers who had started grabbing it.

- The Zulu wanted to **protect** their independence which was threatened by the Boers.
- There was also the determination of the Boers not to go back to the Cape Colony and suffer again. Therefore, they had to fight the Zulu so as to establish a home or state in Zululand which led to war.
- The Zulu were **naturally warriors** who always fought foreigners, hence leading to war.
- The Africans never trusted the whites after a Xhosa refugee called **Jacob Msimbile** had warned Dingane about the danger of trusting the whites.
- The failure of land negotiations between the Boers and the Zulu meant that only war would solve the problem of land ownership between the two parties.
- The Zulu believed that the Boers represented the British and therefore, Dingane wanted to send a clear warning to the British not to involve in the Zulu wars.
- The Zulu wanted to raid the Boer cattle in order to boost their economy which forced them to fight the Boers.
- Dingane was also warned that many Boers were coming to occupy his territory and yet many more were to follow. Therefore, he had to act immediately.
- The Boer's desire to create an independent republic free from the British interference made them to fight with the Zulu who seemed to be an obstacle.
- The killing of **Piet Retief** by Dingane in 1838 annoyed the Boer trekkers, hence forcing them to fight a war of revenge against the Zulu.
- The election of **Andries Pretorius** in 1838 to replace Piet Retief who had been killed gave the Boers courage and determination to fight the Zulu.
- The Boers were arrogant and confident of defeating the Zulu since they had strong guns. This explains why they decided without fear to attack the Zulu on the banks of the Blood River.
- The unfaithfulness of king Dingane who refused to hand over land as earlier promised annoyed the Boers, hence leading to war.
- The Zulu believed that they would easily gain victory after the killing of Piet Retief who was a Boer leader on **6th February 1838**.
- The return of Dingane's stolen cattle by Piet Retief created an excuse for the Boers to attack Dingane since they wanted to force him to pay for the work done.
- The destruction of almost all the Boer camps in Eastern Natal in **mid February 1838** and the killing of many Boers encouraged the survivors in Western Natal to fight for their lives.
- The camping of the Boer Commandos (fighters) along river **Ncome** (Blood River) on **5th December 1838** scared the Zulu, hence forcing them to attack the Boers which led to war.
- **EFFECTS OF THE BATTLE OF BLOOD RIVER**
- The Zulu were defeated by the Boers by 1838.
- Dingane was forced to leave his throne and he was replaced by his brother **Mpande**.
- Dingane fled or escaped to Swaziland where he was captured and killed by the Swazi people under **King Mswati**.
- It led to the establishment of the new Boer republic of **Natal** in **1839** in Zululand.

- It marked the beginning of the Zulu loss of independence since the kingdom was weakened and reduced in size.
- It led to the rise of Andries Pretorius who was elected as the new president and army commander of Natal Republic and he later played a big role in the history of South Africa.
- The whites started interfering in the Zulu politics. For example, they appointed Mpande to become the king and therefore destroyed the hereditary leadership.
- The battle led to the loss of lives of both the Africans and the Boers. About 20,000 people are believed to have died.
- There was depopulation in Zulu land and Natal due to the loss of lives.
- The battle led to the destruction of property like houses and gardens.
- It laid a foundation for the **Apartheid policy** in South Africa since the Boers started discriminating the Africans.
- There was a lot of suffering and misery among the Zulu people.
- The Zulu were displaced from their original land since the Boers migrated in large numbers.
- It led to the decline in agriculture since the Africans spent much of their time fighting, thus leading to **famine** in Zululand.
- There was decline in **trade and commerce** since the Africans never had time to engage in serious trade.
- The Zulu royal family was divided, thus leading to conflicts between Dingane and Mpande.
- **REASONS WHY THE AFRICANS WERE DEFEATED IN THE GREAT TREK WARS.**
 - Why did the Boers defeat the Ndebele during the Battle of Vegkop of 1836?
 - Why did the Boers defeat the Zulu in the Battle of Blood River of 1838?
 - The Africans were defeated because they had inferior weapons like spears, arrows and stones.
 - The Africans had a weak economy or they were poor to finance a major war against the Boers.
 - The Africans were defeated because they were disunited yet the whites cooperated during the wars.
 - The outbreak of natural calamities like drought and famine weakened the Africans, hence leading to their defeat.
 - The Africans had **poor leadership** which could not enable them defeat the Boers who had strong leaders.
 - The Africans were defeated because they had poor military training.
 - Some Africans were betrayed by their fellow Africans who collaborated with the Boers.
 - The Africans had poor military tactics compared to the Boers who used the **"Laager System"**.
 - The death of some African leaders like Dingane weakened the African fighters, hence leading to their defeat.

- The Africans especially the Zulu lacked support from their African neighbors since they were unfriendly to them.
- The Africans believed in traditional beliefs and magic which betrayed them.
- The outbreak of diseases like sexually transmitted diseases killed many Africans, hence leading to their defeat.
- The influence of the Christian missionaries who divided up the Africans between the believers and non believers led to their defeat.
- The low levels of **African nationalism** among the Africans made them unable to put up a strong resistance against the Boers, leading to their defeat.
- **THE FORMATION OF THE BOER REPUBLICS AFTER THE GREAT TREK**
- **a) NATAL**
- Describe the formation of the republic of Natal by 1839.
- How was the republic of Natal established by 1839?
- Describe the origin of Natal republic
- Natal was established by the Boer trekkers from the Cape Colony into the interior of South Africa.
- It was founded by the third group of the Boer trekkers which was led by **Piet Retief** and later **Andries Pretorius**.
- In 1837, Piet Retief reached Zululand with his group and asked for land from the Zulu king Dingane.
- Dingane promised land to Piet Retief on condition that he recovered his stolen cattle from **Sekonyela** who was the king of the **Tlokwa**.
- Piet Retief easily recovered the stolen cattle and gave them back to Dingane.
- Dingane became suspicious and throughout that Piet Retief and his followers had a plan of joining Sekonyela to fight him.
- He therefore started planning how to do away with them.
- He organized a beer party where Piet Retief and some of his people were invited.
- While on the party, Dingane ordered his warriors to "Kill the Wizards" and therefore Dingane and all his followers were murdered.
- The remaining Boer trekkers elected **Andries Pretorius** who took over leadership after the death of Piet Retief.
- On **16th December 1838**, the Boers under Andries Pretorius attacked and defeated the Zulu at the **Battle of Blood River**.
- The Boers forced the Zulu army to give up the territory across river **Tugela** and in **1839** they set up the **republic of Natal**.
- The capital of the republic was established at **Pietmaritzberg**.
- Dingane decided to escape to the neighboring Swazi nation where he was later killed by the Swazi warriors.
- Mpande who was Dingane's brother, with the support of the Boers became the new king of the Zulu.
- The Boers later established a new administrative (government) structure with a parliament which consisted of twenty four (24) members known as the **Volksraad** (People's Council).

- They also established an army council called the **Krygraad** with Andries Pretorius as the **Commandant-General**.
- The Volksraad (parliament) served as the court of appeal and it would elect the president whenever it was found necessary.
- The republic was however **short lived** as the British annexed it to the Cape Colony in **1843**.
- **THE BRITISH ANNEXATION (OCCUPATION) OF NATAL.**
- By 1844, the new Boer republic of Natal had been annexed to the Cape Colony as one of its provinces.
- The struggle between Boers and the British started in 1842, and by **1843**, the Boer authorities had been forced to surrender and Natal therefore fell under the hands of the British.
- **REASONS WHY THE BRITISH ANNEXED NATAL IN 1843**
- The British took over Natal because of political and economic reasons as seen below;
- The British wanted to use Natal as a base to extend their **imperialism** (colonialism) further into the interior of South Africa.
- The British never wanted the Boers to be independent, hence annexing their republic of Natal in 1843.
- The British continued to regard the Boers as their subjects wherever they were. This influenced them to take over Natal in 1843.
- The British annexed Natal in order to discourage the Boers from further migration into the interior.
- The British had received reports that the Boers were **enslaving** the Africans and therefore they took over Natal to stop the Boers from enslaving the Africans.
- The British wanted to destroy Port Natal (Port Durban) which had started threatening the Cape Town i.e. it was likely to outcompete the Cape in terms of trade.
- The British claimed that the Boers in Natal were very weak and therefore they needed protection from the hostile Africans.
- The Boers had internal conflicts especially among the leaders which forced the British to come in and settle the conflicts.
- The British never wanted the Boers to have any sea contact as they would easily connect with their enemies especially France.
- The British had a policy of following up the Boers wherever they went, hence their annexation of Natal.
- The rumours that Natal was rich in mineral resources increased the British determination to annex the republic with a hope of getting minerals there.
- The British wanted to take over the fertile soils of Natal so as to establish plantation farming in Natal.
- The Boers had failed to establish a stable form of administration and therefore the British took advantage of their weakness to annex Natal in 1843.
- The death of **Piet Retief** gave the British a chance to occupy Natal because there was no courageous Boer leader to unite the Boers after his death.

- The government of Natal had become **bankrupt**. It gave out land to the settlers without paying rent and therefore it became economically weak which forced the British to occupy it so as to save it from further economic collapse.
- The too many wars on the Eastern Frontier (border) of the Cape Colony between the Boers and the Africans (Kaffir Wars) encouraged the British to occupy the area.
- The British hated the existence of rival European settlers on the shores of the Indian Ocean. They wanted to dominate the economic advantages of the Indian Ocean which could only be achieved if Natal was under their control.
- The British never wanted the Boers to be in control of Natal because their Sea route to India and the trade in the Far East would be disturbed.
- The Boers were divided. For example, the Volksraad (People's Council) was against the supporters of Andries Pretorius which made it easy for the British to take over Natal.
- The British feared that the Boers would collaborate with the powerful African leaders against them for example Mosheshe of the Basuto nation.
- The British wanted to prevent the extension of the **Boer racism** into the interior of South Africa.
- **EFFECTS OF THE BRITISH ANNEXATION OF NATAL**
- The Boer republic of Natal came to an end and therefore the Boers lost their independence.
- Natal became part of the British Cape Colony and therefore it was put under the British Cape governor.
- The annexation made the Boers to leave Natal and settle in other areas beyond river Vaal.
- It led to depopulation of both the Africans and the whites as they killed themselves during the wars.
- Both the Africans and the Boers lost their land to the British.
- It laid a foundation for the British annexation of other Boer republics like Orange Free State and Transvaal.
- Both the Africans and the Boers lost their property such as cattle to the British.
- The enmity and hatred between the Boers and the British increased as a result of the annexation of Natal.
- It led to the establishment of sugar cane plantations in Natal by the British in order to strengthen their economy.
- The Boer racial discrimination was spread into the interior of South Africa where they eventually went.
- The British were affected economically due the financial costs involved in the administration of Natal.
- The Boers became divided whereby some decided to stay under the British rule while others decided to migrate away.
- It laid a foundation for future wars between the Boers and the British like the First Anglo-Boer War of 1880-1881 and the Second Anglo – Boer War of 1899-1902.
- The migrating Boers displaced the Africans from their fertile land to infertile areas.
- The British introduced their language and culture in the area (Natal).

- **b) THE FORMATION OF ORANGE FREE STATE**

- Describe the foundation of the Boer republic of Orange Free State.
- Explain the origin of Orange Free State.
- How was the Boer republic of Orange Free State established?
- Orange Free State was the second Boer republic to be established and it was formed by the second group of the Boer trekkers led by Hendrick Portgieter, Gerrit Maritz and Sarel Celliers.
- Orange Free State was established between river Orange and river Vaal.
- It was formed after clashes between the Boers and the Ndebele under Mzilikazi in 1836.
- When the second group of Boer trekkers reached Ndebele Kingdom in 1836, the Ndebele king Mzilikazi tried to prevent them from occupying his kingdom.
- The Boers later fought the Ndebele in the **Battle of Vegkop of 1836** where the Ndebele were defeated.
- They were forced northwards across **river Limpopo**, thus leaving their homeland to the Boer trekkers.
- The Boers decided to establish a new state of Orange Free State in the Ndebele area.
- They were later joined by the Boer trekkers from Natal after it was annexed by the British in 1843.
- In 1844, the Boers drafted a constitution and elected a legislative council or parliament to govern the state.
- Hendrick Portgieter was elected the first president of Orange Free State and the Commander of the armed forces.
- Unfortunately, Orange Free State was annexed by the British in 1848 under the British governor **Sir Harry Smith**.
- He changed the name of Orange Free State to **Orange River colony (ORC)**.
- The Boers tried to resist the annexation, but they were finally defeated by the British.
- In **1849**, the British Commissioner called **Warden** tried to solve the land conflicts between the Basuto and the Boers, hence drawing the "**Warden line**" to act as the boundary.
- Mosheshe, the Basuto king used this opportunity to attack the Boers in Orange River Colony and chased many of them out of his land.
- In **1854**, the **Bloemfontein treaty or Convention** was signed which gave back Orange Free State its independence.
- The Boers after regaining their independence renamed Orange River Colony back to Orange Free State and **Hoffmayer** was elected the first president of the newly created Orange Free State.
- **REASONS FOR THE BRITISH ANNEXATION OF ORANGE FREE STATE.**
- There were various reasons that led to the British annexation of Orange Free State in 1848 as seen below;
- The British regarded the Boers as their subjects (servants) and therefore they wanted to extend their authority over them.

- The long term hatred and suspicion between the British and the Boers forced the British to occupy Orange Free State.
- The British wanted to “kill” the **Boer nationalism** and independence by annexing Orange Free State.
- The rise of the **British imperialism** and desire to control the whole of South Africa made them to occupy Orange Free State.
- The British wanted to use Orange Free State to extend their influence into the interior of South Africa
- The earlier occupation (annexation) of Natal in 1843 encouraged the British to occupy Orange Free State so as to regulate the Boer activities.
- The population of the Boers had scattered all over South Africa which encouraged British to occupy Orange Free states in order to avoid the spread of the Boer racism (segregation) in the interior of South Africa.
- The failure of the Boers to establish a strong and stable government in Orange Free State influenced the British to occupy the area so as to create a strong administration.
- The existence of the land conflicts between the Boers and the Basuto attracted the British to conquer and intervene in order to maintain peace and security in the area.
- The leader of the Basuto nation - Moshehe had also requested the British to provide him with protection against the Boers, hence forcing the British to occupy the Orange Free State.
- The British wanted to stop the Boer mistreatment of the Africans in Orange Free State through enslaving them.
- The Boers had been weakened by the constant conflicts with the Africans like the Ndebele and the Basuto. Therefore, they could not resist the British occupation of Orange Free State.
- The disunity among the Boers encouraged the British to occupy Orange Free State. The Boers had internal conflicts among themselves and with the Africans.
- The British hoped to find minerals in Orange Free State, hence leading to its annexation in order to exploit them.
- The British were interested in the fertile soils of the Orange Free State in order to extend their farming into the interior, hence leading to annexation.
- The British were not satisfied with the Great Trek of the Boers which forced them to continue following up the Boers wherever they went.
- **EFFECTS OF THE BRITISH ANNEXATION OF ORANGE FREE STATE**
- How did the British annexation of Orange Free State affect the people of South Africa?
- What were the effects of the British annexation of Orange Free State in 1848?
- The Boers lost their independence to the British after the annexation.
- It increased the hatred and enmity between the British and the Boers because the Boers greatly opposed the annexation.
- It created a class of rebellious Boers who resisted the British annexation and they decided to fight with the British at the battle of the **Boomplatus** but they were defeated.

- Some of the Boers decided to migrate again under the leadership of **Andries Pretorius** and formed the Boer state of Transvaal.
- The Boers lost their land to the British who took over the administration of the Orange Free State.
- It increased the **Boer nationalism** as they realized the need to struggle for their independence.
- It laid a foundation for the outbreak of future wars between the Boers and the British for example the first Anglo-Boer War of 1880-1881 and the Second Anglo-Boer War of 1899-1902.
- The British influence was extended into the interior of South Africa which enabled the British to control a larger part of South Africa
- The British interfered in the political affairs of the Africans in order to solve the conflicts between the Boers and the Africans.
- It led to the increase in the population of the whites in the interior of South Africa.
- The Boers entered into an agreement with the British in **1854** which came to be known as the **Bloemfontein Convention or agreement**.
- The British decided to relax their policies over the Boers and therefore they granted semi-independence to Orange Free State.
- It increased the **British imperialism** and the need to control the whole of South Africa.
- **THE FORMATION OF TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC**
- Explain the origin of the Boers republic of Transvaal
- How was Transvaal republic established?
- Describe the formation of Transvaal republic.
- Transvaal republic was the first established near the banks of Limpopo River and later shifted across river Vaal hence the name Transvaal.
- The founders of this republic were militant Boer trekkers who had engaged in power struggles with the British.
- Some of the leaders who formed Transvaal republic included Andries Pretorius, Culliers and Gerrit Maritz.
- Transvaal republic was formed after the British annexation of Natal and Orange Free State in 1843 and 1848 respectively.
- It was decided that the Boer commandos should migrate and look for a peaceful area to resettle the Boers who had lost independence in both Natal and Orange Free State.
- Andries Pretorius together with Williem Jourbert identified Transvaal republic and called upon other Boers leaders like Sarel Celliers and Maritz to join them.
- They formulated a constitution to govern them and later elected a parliamentary council with judicial powers.
- In **November 1851**, a British officer by the names of **Owen** was sent to solve administrative conflicts in the area.
- The Boers were not happy with the idea as they looked at the British with an intention of attempting to take over (control annex) their Transvaal republic.

- In **1852**, they signed the **Sand River Convention** in order to avoid war between the British and the Boers.
- The British left or abandoned their plans of annexing Transvaal republic and therefore they granted it independence.
- Andries Pretorius became the first elected President of Transvaal republic and he was succeeded by the **Thomas Burgers** who was also later succeeded by **Paul Kruger**.
- In 1855, Pretorius persuaded the Boers to establish a government which would be responsible for reviewing the constitution of Transvaal.
- The constitution was finally adopted and Pretorius was given a lot of power as the President and he named the capital city of Transvaal **Pretoria**.
- The British later on decided to come back and annexed Transvaal in **1877**.
- **PROBLEMS FACED BY THE BOERS IN THEIR NEW REPUBLICS**
- What problems were faced by the Boer republic in South Africa?
- What hindered the Boers in their new states of Natal, Orange Free State and Transvaal?
- The Boers faced a number of problems in their new republics which included the following;
 - Disunity among the Boers brought about by divisions and quarrels.
 - There was struggle for power among the Boer leaders like Hendrick Portgieter and Pretorius.
 - There were weak and inexperienced governments created by the Boers in their new republics.
 - They faced financial problems that forced them to borrow money from the British.
 - There were boundary conflicts between them and the Africans which always caused wars and constant attacks from the hostile African tribes.
 - They sometimes lost their lives during wars between the Africans and the British.
 - They lost property especially through cattle raiding by the African tribes.
 - They at first lacked land for settlement.
 - They suffered from British imperialism or influence.
 - The British later annexed their republics like Natal (1843), Orange Free State (1848) and Transvaal (1877).
 - The British kept on the following them which denied them independence.
 - The British refused them to contact with other whites like the Germans in Namibia
 - They conflicted with the Africans communities leading to wars like the Battle of Vegkkop of 1836 and the Blood River Battle of 1838.
 - The mineral wealth in the Boer republics increased enmity between them and the British.
 - There were poor communication and transport networks in the Boer republics.
 - The increasing number of Uitlanders in Boer republics especially Transvaal threatened the Boer interests.
- **AFRIKANER OR BOER NATIONALISM**
- Nationalism is the strong love for one's own country or nation.

- Afrikaner nationalism was a nationalistic movement that emerged in the late 19th century as a movement of Boer resistance against the British.
- The Boers or Dutch started calling themselves **Afrikaners** after staying in South Africa for a long time, hence developing South Africa as their "cradle land".
- The Dutch also formulated their new language called **Afrikaans** which was a completely different language in South Africa.
- The **Afrikaners** consisted of the original Dutch settlers who had stayed in South Africa for long and they decided never to go back to Holland.
- Afrikaner nationalism was a struggle by the Boers who wanted to protect their cultural pride and national independence from British imperialists.
- It was a struggle by the Boers to protect their "God chosen race" from the British who had annexed their republics.
- **REASONS FOR THE GROWTH OF AFRIKANER NATIONALISM**
- Why was there a rise in Afrikaner nationalism after 1850's?
- Why did the Boer states become more united after 1850?
- Why did the Boers of Orange Free State and Transvaal unite after 1850?
- The Boers feared being swallowed up by the British, hence the desire to be free which led to the rise of their nationalism.
- The Boers believed that their race was unique or special and **God chosen**, hence protecting it against the strangers.
- The Boer language was in danger after being abolished by the British, hence creating a new language that promoted their nationalism.
- The Boer culture was also under the threat of the English culture, hence leading to the rise of their nationalism.
- The Boers hated the British policies on land and education which forced them to fight for their own rights.
- The British policy of regarding the Boers as their subjects annoyed them and therefore they started to fight them.
- They were fed up of the British system of following them wherever they went.
- They wanted to treat Africans as they wanted including mistreatment of the Africans.
- The **Sand River Convention of 1852** which gave Transvaal semi- independence inspired the Boers to demand for full independence.
- The Bloemfontein Convention of 1854 which gave Orange Free State independence was another factor for the rise of Boer nationalism.
- The cooperation and unity between Transvaal and **Orange Free State** Boers after 1854 boosted their strength, hence promoting their nationalism.
- The Boers feared that the Africans would overpower them during their rebellions hence forcing them to come together which promoted Afrikaner nationalism.
- The British annexation of the Boer republics annoyed Boers, hence making them to come together and fight them.
- The mineral discovery by the Boers in their republic made them more determined to defend themselves against the British interference which led to the rise of Afrikaner nationalism.

- The rise of strong Boer leaders like **Paul Kruger** who mobilized other Boers to fight the British led to the growth of Afrikaner nationalism.
- The granting of equal rights to the Africans by the British annoyed the Boers hence promoting their nationalism.
- The European scramble for South Africa worried the Boers, hence forcing them to begin fighting for their rights.
- **STEPS USED BY THE BOERS TO PROMOTE THEIR NATIONALISM**
- Explain the measures taken by Boers to promote their nationalism?
- What steps were taken by the Afrikaners to promote their nationalism?
- How did the Afrikaner nationalism promote Boer republic by 1850s?
- The Boer church ministers started movements to promote Boer nationalism like the ***Afrikaans*** language and the ***Afrikaner religion***.
- In the 1880s, the Boers started a political party called the '**Afrikaner Bond**' which fought for the Boer nationalism.
- Reverend J.S. Dutoit who was a Church minister with DRC (Dutch Reformed Church) started daily preaching in the church to sensitize the Boer children on Afrikaner nationalism.
- The Boer cultural leaders started cultural movements in order to promote Afrikaner nationalism.
- In 1876, the Boers came up with a newspaper called the "**Afrikaan Zuid**" to promote nationalism.
- They also elected **John Hofmeyer** to take over leadership of the ***Afrikaner Bond*** political party.
- Hofmeyer turned the political party into a powerful political group which asked for independence from the British.
- The Boers also struggled hard for recognition in the parliament which the British had denied them for long.
- The Boers also formed an association which strengthened Boer nationalism
- The association later formed another newspaper called the ***Afrikaner Patriot*** in 1876.
- The Afrikaner Patriot condemned the British annexation of the Boer states and encouraged Boer unity.
- The Boers also wrote a book in the ***Afrikaans language*** in order to promote their mother tongue.
- The books written by the Boers indicated the history of their states or republics and the need to fight for their independence. For example, they wrote a book called ***"The history of the country in the language of our people"***.
- **THE MISSIONARIES IN SOUTH AFRICA**
- The missionaries were "soldiers" of Christ who came to South Africa to spread Christianity.
- They came to South Africa after the revival of the religious movement in England in the 18th Century.
- The key missionaries who came to South Africa were Dr. John Moffat, John Phillip, Van Der Kemp and Dr. David Livingstone among others.

- They were sent by different missionary organizations like the London Missionary Society (LMS), the Church Missionary Society (CMS), the Paris Evangelical Mission (PEM), the Free Church of Scotland (FCS), the British Bible Society (BBS), the Moravian Missionaries (MM) and the Dutch Reformed Church (DRC).
- These religious groups or churches operated in different parts of South Africa. For example, the London Missionary Society worked among the Xhosa, Khoikhoi and Cape colony, the Moravian Missionaries worked among the Africans like the Khoikhoi, the Free Church of Scotland operated in areas like Natal and the Dutch Reformed Church worked mainly in the Dutch settled areas while the Paris Evangelical Mission (PEM) worked among the Basuto under King Moshe.
- **REASONS FOR THE COMING OF THE MISSIONARIES TO SOUTH AFRICA**
- They wanted to spread Christianity among the people of South Africa.
- The desire to stop the bad African practices like human sacrifice, murder of twins, witchcraft and polygamy led to the coming of the missionaries.
- The missionaries wanted to stop the slavery that was being practiced by the Boers and fight for African freedom.
- The missionaries wanted to spread western cultures like language, dressing, music and dancing which they believed to be superior to that of the Africans.
- Some came as a result of adventure and therefore they wanted to discover new areas.
- They were running away from the political instabilities in Europe like the French revolution of 1789 and the Napoleonic Wars.
- Other missionaries wanted to acquire new colonies for their home countries like Britain and France.
- The discovery of quinine gave courage to the missionaries to come to South Africa because it reduced the fear of Africa by the Europeans which had been regarded as a white man's burden.
- They also came to spread western civilization through education since they believed that the Africans were backward and it was their duty to civilize them.
- Some missionaries came to promote legitimate trade after the abolition of slave trade.
- **MISSIONARY ACTIVITIES IN SOUTH AFRICA**
- Their activities were **political**, **economic** and **social** in nature as described below;
- They preached the gospel or Christianity to the Africans.
- They built a number of Churches where the gospel was preached and Christianity was spread further.
- They built mission stations for the run-away slaves like Bethelsdorp near Port Elizabeth. This mission station was established by Van Der Kemp and it became the political headquarters of the Africans in the fight against the Whites.
- They built technical schools in places like Lovedale and Heald Town in the Cape colony.
- They built formal schools where Africans were taught how to read and write.
- They taught Africans practical skills like carpentry, bricklaying and shoe making among others.

- They built hospitals and health centers or they fought against diseases among the Africans.
- They built roads so as to improve on transport and communication.
- They discouraged some African cultures and traditions like polygamy and witchcraft.
- They spread western culture to the Africans and gave them new languages and new eating habits.
- They also called for a fair hearing to African cases and complaints.
- Some missionaries like Van Der Kemp encouraged hard work or fought laziness among the Africans.
- They established the first printing press in South Africa which they used to publish a number of books. For example, Dr. John Phillip wrote a book "*Researchers in South Africa*" which was an attack on the white attitude towards the Africans.
- They advocated for the removal of the Pass system or Pass laws that limited African movements in South Africa.
- They demanded for the reduction of the long working hours for slaves.
- They also influenced the emancipation or liberation of slaves in 1834.
- They even influenced the passing of the 50th Ordinance in 1828 that restored the rights of the Africans.
- They exerted pressure on the British government to introduce the Black Circuit Courts in 1811 so as to fight for the rights of the Africans or slaves.
- They campaigned against African slavery and bondage of Boer Masters.
- They fought against racial segregation or Apartheid of Boers in South Africa.
- They called for equality, fraternity, liberty, freedom and humanity of the non-whites in South Africa or they fought for the civil and political rights of the Africans.
- They even married Africans so as to promote inter-cultural mixing for example Van der Kemp.
- They also intervened in the Xhosa-Boer wars or Kaffir Wars. For example, Dr. John Phillip called for the return of the Xhosa land during the Sixth Kaffir War. This therefore helped the Africans to regain their lost land.
- They even convinced the British Parliament to nullify or cancel the British annexation of the Province of Queen Adelaide.
- The Dutch Reformed Church preached social segregation and superiority of the whites against the Africans.
- The missionaries acted as agents of colonialism. For example, at times they spied on the African governments on behalf of their home governments.
- **EFFECTS OF MISSIONARY ACTIVITIES ON THE PEOPLE OF SOUTH AFRICA**
- The results were **political**, **social**, and **economic** in nature as well as positive and negative as explained below;
- Many Africans were converted to Christianity.
- African traditional religion and cultures were undermined and considered backward and primitive. For example, there was decrease in polygamy, witchcraft, twin murder and worshipping of idols among others.
- Many Africans adopted European cultures through education, dressing and religion.

- Some African chiefs lost their respect as their people put a lot of respect on the new religion, thus undermining the traditional authority. Some Africans even refused to fight in the defence of their chiefs.
- They divided Africans into hostile camps like Christians against non-Christians as well as the educated against non-educated.
- Through promoting inter-tribal conflicts, tribalism and sectarianism were created by the Christian missionaries.
- Their activities further led to the formation of the Independent Churches that tried to preach an African oriented version of the Gospel.
- They encouraged hard work among the Africans and many were able to get paid Jobs.
- In their schools, the Africans got trained for white collar Jobs or professions like doctors, nurses, teachers, lawyers and interpreters among others.
- The Africans learnt how to read and write and therefore they became literate.
- Their schools prepared and created a feeling of independence among the Africans i.e they produced the pioneer nationalists in South Africa like Nelson Mandela, Albert Lithuli and Robert Sobukwe. Therefore, they laid a foundation for the growth of African nationalism.
- They put the Bantu languages into writing and this improved on the communication between the Africans and the whites.
- The Africans learnt foreign languages like French, Dutch, English and Latin.
- The Africans got better health care through the hospitals and this reduced on the death rates among the Africans or the South African people.
- Their mission stations became homes for the run-away slaves, thus protecting the African slaves from the Boer mistreatment.
- They promoted equality of all races through building racially mixed schools like Lovedale.
- They provided Africans with educational values, knowledge, skills and positive attitude.
- Through their technical schools, the Africans acquired technical skills such as bricklaying, carpentry, joinery, construction and building as well as shoe making.
- They led to the establishment of the Black Circuit Courts that gave the Africans a chance to report their harsh Boer masters.
- The Africans enjoyed some of their rights like freedom of movement after the passing the 50th Ordinance, the right to good working conditions and others.
- Some Africans like the Xhosa regained some of their land that had been taken by the Boers.
- They improved communication and transport by building roads and bridges that made life better for the Africans.
- The activities of the missionaries improved on the living standards of the people in South Africa.
- They led to a class of collaborators like Chief Khama of the Tswana who helped in the colonization of Botswana.

- They improved on agriculture through scientific means like hybrid seeds, ox-ploughs, crop rotation, mulching and the use of fertilizers, thus leading to increased agricultural output.
- They won African trust. For example, Dr. Van Der Kemp dressed in the Khoikhoi style and walked bare footed.
- They also spoilt the relationship between the Boers and the British through favouring the Africans. This together with the good or warm relations that the missionaries had with the Africans led to the outbreak of the Great Trek.
- Their teachings also made the Boer farmers to experience labour shortages on their farms.
- The conflicts between the Boers and British missionaries led to the **Slatcher's Nek incident or killings of 1816**. By this incident, five Boers who were rebelling against the British were hanged by the British.
- They introduced western architecture of building squared houses using bricks and iron sheets.
- But some missionary groups like the Dutch Reformed Church encouraged Apartheid or social segregation.
- Their activities laid a foundation for the colonization of South Africa, thus leading to the loss of independence by the Africans. They therefore acted as forerunners of colonization.
- They encouraged the Barolong tribe to declare their independence from Mosheshe, hence undermining the African authority.
- They encouraged inter-cultural marriages with the Africans and promoted equality.
- Their teachings led to the stopping of slavery in 1834.
- They are also credited for having established the first printing press at the cape which produced reading materials for the Africans.
- They encouraged legitimate trade between the Africans and whites which improved African standards of living.
- They participated in the local African politics either as suppliers of guns or advisors to African chiefs. For example, the Paris Evangelical Mission (PEM) provided good political advice to Mosheshe and helped him to cool down resistances.
- They translated the Bible from English to the local languages, hence easing the spread of the gospel.
- They mediated in the African-Boer conflicts like the Kaffir Wars, thus creating peace among the Africans and the Boers.
- The missionary activities led to loss of African land. For example, the Dutch Reformed Church grabbed African land while the Basuto also lost land to the Wesleyan Missionaries.
- **PROBLEMS FACED BY THE MISSIONARIES IN SOUTH AFRICA**
- They suffered from language barrier which delayed their work.
- The poor transport and communication network hindered their work.
- They were attacked by tropical diseases such as malaria that killed many missionaries like David Livingstone.

- They faced opposition from the white community especially the Boers who never wanted equality for the Africans.
- They were attacked by the hostile African tribes leading to the loss of lives.
- They lacked enough funds to carry out their work.
- They faced a problem of wild animals like lions and tigers.
- Sometimes the missionaries were killed while fighting for the rights of the Africans and the lost land.
- They lacked enough man power because the area of operation was large.
- The establishment of mission stations caused resistance to those that had lost their land.
- The missionary practices at times conflicted with African traditions like monogamy as opposed to polygamy.
- They were not used to the tropical climate which made their work difficult.
- They faced opposition from some African chiefs who misunderstood them.
- **THEROLES PLAYED BY THE LEADING MISSIONARIES IN SOUTH AFRICA**
- **DR. JOHN PHILLIP**
- Dr. John Phillip was one of the most important missionaries who operated in South Africa.
- He was sent from the London Missionary Society to spread Christianity among the Africans and he arrived in South Africa in **1819**.
- On his arrival to South Africa, he begun by working in the Khoikhoi communities and then spread out to other communities.
- He spent much of his time moving to several places in South Africa helping the Africans.
- He was a promoter or champion of the African rights and he condemned the Boer hostility against the Africans. This earned him many enemies among the Boers.
- He was greatly touched by the way the Dutch people were mistreating the Africans and from such an experience, John Philip became determined to fight for the African rights.
- He later wrote and published a book "**Researchers in South Africa**" in which he expressed his own views on the fight for the African rights.
- Through the book and through his activities, he greatly condemned or attacked the Boers for mistreating the Africans.
- He was later appointed as a Supretendant of the London Missionary Society.
- He strongly attacked the **Hottentot Code of 1809**.
- He even went ahead and advocated for separate settlements for the Africans and the Boers if at all the Africans were to receive peace.
- He even called for European humanitarians to come and assist the Africans in South Africa.
- It was him who engineered or led to the passing of the **50th Ordinance of 1828** which restored the civil rights or liberties of the Africans and changed the oppressive laws.
- He contributed to the **Abolition of Slavery Act** which was passed in **1834**.

- He became directly involved in the conflicts between the Africans like the Xhosa over the Eastern Frontier. In these wars, he criticized the whites for grabbing the African land.
- He demanded for the return of the land that the Boers had taken between River Kei and River Keiskama after the 6th Kaffir War and the land was returned to the Xhosa.
- He encouraged the Africans to buy land and look for better employment away from the Boers.
- He promoted African education by encouraging many young Africans to go to school which created an educated class of people.
- He kept in touch with the British government and informed the British government about the evils practiced by the Boer masters over the Africans.
- He condemned or criticized African traditional practices such as initiation ceremonies like killing of twins and polygamy among others.
- **DR.VAN DER KEMP**
- Dr.Van Der Kemp was the earliest missionary to come to South Africa.
- He was sent by the London Missionary Society (LMS). He was a Dutch missionary and he arrived in South Africa in **1779**.
- On his arrival, he worked among the KhoiKhoi and the Xhosa.
- He believed in the equality of all races and even married a coloured woman who was produced by a slave mother.
- Though a Dutch, he was very close to the Blacks and very much associated with them. He was therefore criticized by the Boers because of his closeness to the Africans.
- The early Dutch settlers accused him of encouraging laziness among the Africans. However, the truth was that Van Der Kemp encouraged hard work among the Africans especially in the field of agriculture.
- He also encouraged the Africans to take up practical skills like building, carpentry and brick making which improved the African standards of living.
- He promoted the spread of Christianity among the people where he worked like the KhoiKhoi and the Xhosa.
- He criticized male dominance and encouraged women emancipation.
- He promoted African values. For example, he dressed like a KhoiKhoi and also walked bare footed so as to resemble the Africans.
- He also helped in the establishment of the Black Circuit Courts in 1811 to 1812 which could listen to the African complaints against the Boer masters.
- He also established hospitals and other health centres which improved the health of the Africans. For example, he established a dispensary at **Bethelsdrop**.
- He protected the Blacks from their white oppressive masters. For example, his mission station at Bethelsdrop was used to protect the Africans during their wars against the whites like the Kaffir Wars.
- He criticized the bad African traditional practices like the killing of twins and as a result, they were abolished.
- **THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH IN SOUTH AFRICA**

- This was the earliest or oldest Christian Church in South Africa. It was formed by the earliest Dutch settlers.
- It originated from Holland and was mainly based at the Cape.
- It was formed to bring the Dutch settlers under their religion. Therefore, it was the official church of the Dutch settlers.
- By 1806, when the British took over the cape, the Dutch Reformed Church was very powerful.
- It gained more strength when other missionaries came to South Africa.
- This Church was against the human rights or freedom for the non-whites in South Africa.
- It was the only Church in South Africa that never supported the Africans.
- Its teachings were based only on the Old Testament especially the story of Noah and his three sons (Ham, Shem and Japheth). It stated that, while the whites were born saved and superior, the non whites belonged to Ham and were therefore born doomed and cursed.
- It therefore encouraged the mistreatment of the Africans by the whites especially the slave masters.
- Its teachings made the Boers hostile to the Africans. To them, it was normal for the whites to kill Africans.
- They believed that God had sent them to preserve the white civilization.
- The church promoted Boer unity, isolation and pride. As a result of its teachings, the Dutch took themselves as the "Israelites" or chosen race and also viewed South Africa as their Canaan or the Promised Land.
- It encouraged its members to make pilgrimage (holy visit) once a year at Swellendam and GraafReinet.
- It also encouraged trade in cattle, sheep and sugar among the Dutch during the holy visit.
- In the visit, it converted and baptized new Church members hence spreading Christianity.
- It also provided other sacraments like confirmation, holy matrimony and Holy Communion especially during the holy visit.
- These holy visits acted as a tool of keeping the Boers united.
- They built schools for the education of the Dutch settlers.
- It increased Boer arrogance or pride.
- It encouraged the grabbing of African land by the whites.
- It encouraged white racial segregation against the non- whites.
- It encouraged Anglo-Boer phobia (a strong fear for the British) among the Boers. This together with the Boer pride (arrogance) resulted into the Great Trek.
- Its racial teachings laid a foundation for the Apartheid policy in South Africa.
- It provided a cultural link between the Boers in South Africa and those outside.
- **EFFECTS OR ROLE OF THE DUTCH REFORMED CHURCH IN SOUTH AFRICA**
- It led to the discrimination of the Africans.

- Through the activities of the Dutch Reformed Church, the Africans lost some of their land because the church preached that South Africa was the Dutch **Promised Land**.
- The Dutch Reformed Church encouraged slavery of the Africans and exploitation of their resources.
- Through its activities, the Africans were denied freedom of worship as well as freedom of association and movement.
- The Dutch Reformed Church even went ahead to prevent the Africans from receiving formal education and the few Dutch schools never enrolled the African children.
- The Africans were made to establish Independent Churches, some of which were in protest of the activities of the Dutch Reformed Church.
- The Dutch Reformed Church encouraged white hostilities towards the African race.
- Through the activities of the Dutch Reformed Church, the Africans were denied a right of trading freely.
- The activities of the Dutch Reformed Church led to the initial stage of racial segregation which later developed into the Apartheid policy in South Africa.
- **THE AFRICAN INDEPENDENT CHURCHES IN SOUTH AFRICA**
- These were churches which broke away from the missionary or European controlled churches and they were formed and led by the Africans.
- These churches came up in the 19th and 20th centuries.
- They were also called Bantu-led churches especially among the Bantu (Zulu).
- Membership to these churches was open to all Black Africans.
- They were therefore organized on tribal basis.
- They were basically divided into three types i.e. the Ethiopian, Zionist and Messianic church.
- The Ethiopian churches were politically motivated having been formed after the **Adowa Incident of 1896** in which Ethiopia defeated the Italians who had tried to colonize her.
- The Messianic church taught about the "Black Jesus" or "Messiah" and it was led by Isaiah Tshembe - the Zulu Messiah while Nehemiah Tile led the Natal church.
- The Zionist church was made up of "**puritans**" and was supported by the Blacks in the diaspora (a broad) especially in USA.
- **REASONS FOR THE FORMATION OF THE AFRICAN INDEPENDENT CHURCHES IN SOUTH AFRICA**
- They were formed to fight against racial segregation in South Africa.
- They were formed due to the conflicts between the African clergy and white missionaries over leadership. The Africans also wanted to become leaders in the churches like Bishops and Arch-Bishops.
- They were also formed due to long period of training to **priesthood** which the Africans hated.
- The Africans also formed these churches with a hope of using them to fight against European colonialism in South Africa.

- The role played by the leaders of these churches like Isaiah Tshembe of the Messianic church in Zulu land and others led to the rise Independent Churches in South Africa.
- The limited or low pay of the African clergymen compared to their European counterparts or colleagues made the Africans to form their own churches.
- The long and complicated process of conversion to Christianity within the missionary churches was another factor. For example, one had to first be baptized before becoming a Christian.
- The influence of the Blacks in the diaspora or abroad was vital. For example, the Blacks in America especially religious leaders encouraged the Africans in South Africa to break away from white dominated churches and establish their own churches under the African control.
- The discrimination practiced with in the missionary churches forced them to form their own churches.
- The involvement of some Africans in politics gave them leadership skills which also encouraged them to form their own churches.
- The poor living conditions of the Africans in South Africa forced them to form their own churches so as to overcome such suffering.
- The Africans were against the education system introduced by the missionaries especially the boarding schools that required the children to be away from their parents for so long.
- **THE CONTRIBUTION OF THE AFRICAN INDEPENDENT CHURCHES TO THE HISTORY OF SOUTH AFRICA**
- Most of these churches looked outwardly religious but inwardly they were political.
- They preached against the grabbing of African land by the Europeans.
- They preached against the white oppressions of the blacks.
- They trained African clergymen or church leaders.
- These churches worked with other nationalists in South Africa to liberate South African from the Apartheid rule.
- They promoted African nationalism among the Africans.
- They also showed that the Africans were capable of managing their own affairs.
- They translated the Bible into African languages like Zulu.
- They made the Africans hostile against European colonialism.
- They influenced the outbreak of African rebellions like the Bambatha rebellion of 1906 as well as the Nama – Herero rebellion of 1904 – 1907 in Namibia.
- They made the Africans aware that the whites were hostile towards them.
- They sent out a delegation to the outside countries like to USA to demand for African independence.
- They built day schools which provided Africans with practical skills that enabled the Africans to acquire jobs.
- They preserved African culture through allowing African music and poems during the process of worshipping.
- They promoted African languages like the Zulu.
- They openly campaigned for African rights.

- They also encouraged trade among the Africans.
- **PROBLEMS FACED BY THE AFRICAN INDEPENDENT CHURCHES IN SOUTH AFRICA**
- They faced a problem of illiteracy among the Africans who could not read and write.
- They lacked enough funds among themselves to carry out their activities.
- They faced a problem of enough writing materials for the African converts to read like books.
- The tribal differences among the Africans and whites hindered their work.
- They faced hostility from the Dutch and Boers who did not like their activities.
- The religious differences among the Africans themselves.
- They also lacked strong leaders in their early stages of development and who have spearheaded their activities.
- The divide and rule policy that was introduced by the whites was a major problem.
- They also lacked support from the political leaders in South Africa.
- They faced opposition from the African traditionalists.
- **Qn. Explain the contribution of the following in the history of South Africa in the 19th century.**
- **The Dutch Reformed Church**
- **The African Independent Church**
- **THE GREAT MFECANE PERIOD AND ITS AFTER-MATH:**
- **What was the Mfecane?**
- The word "**Mfecane**" has been described variously by different communities.
- To the Nguni, it was **a time or period of trouble or suffering.**
- While to the Sotho -Tswana speakers, it was called "**Defiqane**" to mean period of crushing, scattering and forced migration of communities across their lands.
- Other Nguni tribes called it "**Lifecane**", still meaning a period of suffering and misery.
- This period is also commonly known as the **Nguni Revolution** of the 19th Century.
- The Mfecane period is believed to have occurred in the first 30 years of the 19th Century, particularly between 1800 and 1830.
- Mfecane were wars which took place among the Eastern Bantu tribes like the Zulu, Ndwandwe, Mthethwa, Ngwane (later *Swazi*), Tlokwa, Thembu, Hlubi and Khumalo.
- It involved a period when old empires collapsed and new ones were created.
- The Mfecane started in Northern Zulu land (*Modern Natal*) and later spread to other Bantu tribes in Central Africa before spreading to parts of East Africa.
- It was mainly caused by ambitious (power hungry) and war-like leaders like Dingiswayo, Zwede and Shaka.
- It reached its worst state during the time of Shaka, the king of the Zulu kingdom.
- **THE CAUSES OF THE MFECANE**
- **Why were there the 1800-1830 wars among the Eastern Bantu tribes of South Africa?**
- **Why did the Eastern Bantu tribes fight each other between 1800 and 1830?**
- **What were the causes of the Great Mfecane period?**

- **Why did the Bantu tribes conflict among themselves between 1800 and 1830?**
- The causes of the Mfecane were both **long term** and **immediate** as shown below;
- The rise of ambitious and war-like leaders like Dingiswayo of the Mthethwa, Sobhuza I of the Ngwane (later *Swazi*) and Zwide of the Ndwandwe and their desire to create large empires caused wars and trouble in the region.
- The inter - tribal wars among the Eastern Bantu tribes like the Mthethwa against Ndwandwe as well as Ngwane against Ndwandwe opened gates for the first phase of the Mfecane period.
- The increased **population** of human beings in Natal or South East Africa caused land problem or pressure and the need for expansion which led to wars among the Eastern Bantu tribes.
- **The increased slavery** made many people to hate it and this led to the existence of many displaced people in the region.
- There was **competition** among the different Bantu tribes for areas with favourable climate for human settlement, hence leading to conflicts among the Bantu tribes.
- There was also competition for areas with fertile soils that could favour farming which resulted into the Mfecane wars.
- The increase in animal population in Natal caused a struggle for grazing land as well as good pasture and water for animals.
- The competition and greed for cattle and other forms of wealth caused constant raids and counter raids which caused fights among the Bantu tribes.
- The stiff competition for the control of trade between the Europeans like the Portuguese at Delagoa Bay and the Africans led to more conflicts among the Eastern Bantu tribes which caused further trouble.
- The competition and struggle for power and succession also caused the Mfecane especially in Zulu land
- The presence of harsh natural conditions like drought caused famine and starvation, hence increasing the struggle by the Eastern Bantu tribes to overcome famine.
- The presence of desperate groups of refugees like the **Fingo** who could even resort to cannibalism increased trouble and suffering in the region.
- The meeting and friendship of **Dingiswayo** of the Mthethwa with a European Military Doctor, **Robert Cowen** who gave him a gun and a horse and also taught him how to use a gun caused wars.
- The expansion of the whites especially the Boers into Zulu land caused more pressure among the Bantu people which increased conflicts.
- The killing of **Dingiswayo** and later **Zwide** increased fighting among the Bantu tribes in their areas so as to replace the above powerful leaders.
- The introduction of guns among the Nguni tribes and the struggle for power among them also caused more conflicts.
- The rise to power of **Shaka** in Zulu land intensified or increased the Mfecane (trouble) in the region in many ways;
- **In the first place, his miserable childhood** like being *born out of a royal scandal* since his father was not yet circumcised made him to be unwanted and

regarded as an illegitimate child or bastard which gave him a unique character of having no feelings for the suffering of other people i.e. he was cruel.

- Shaka's early experience with **Dingiswayo** of the **Mthethwa** people made him to learn political and military skills which he later used to fight wars and this resulted into Mfecane.
- Shaka's **military reforms** and the desire to create large political units caused a lot of suffering to his people. For example:
 - Shaka introduced the idea of **total war fare** which increased fighting in Zululand.
 - The organization of the army into **age-regiments** by Shaka made it more effective or stronger and therefore enabled it to fight many offensive and defensive wars.
 - The encouragement of regular training of his forces or military drills where the Zulu warriors were taught the values of discipline, fairness and patriotism to glorify Shaka increased wars.
- The introduction of new fighting weapons like the **short stubbing spears** and **cowhide shields** increased the morale of the soldiers to fight which caused more wars.
- The introduction of new fighting methods like the **"cow horn" method** and the use of surprise attacks enabled Shaka's soldiers to easily defeat their enemies which increased wars.
- Shaka's expansionist policy forced him to attack his neighbours like the Ndwandwe, thus leading to the Mfecane. This was because Shaka was an **aggressive** person by nature.
- Shaka's desire to **loot** or steal caused uncontrolled suffering to others.
- Shaka's assumption of absolute powers in the Zulu kingdom or the **dictatorship** of Shaka caused more suffering which also increased the Mfecane.
- The harsh punishments given to the Zulu warriors or fighters who **cowardised** (refused to fight) like the death penalty forced them to fight many wars which caused the Mfecane.
- Shaka's **absorption or assimilation policy** of the non-Zulu people strengthened his kingdom which encouraged him to fight more wars.
- The **military nature** of the Zulu kingdom that was full of warriors or soldiers and created by warriors increased wars which worsened the Mfecane.
- The creation of special settlements or barracks by Shaka ensured accommodation of the Zulu warriors. This made them ready for war at any time which also increased the Mfecane.
- The creation of good stores or granary for each military settlement as a state policy by Shaka ensured constant food supply and safety.
- The refusal of the soldiers by Shaka to marry until the age of 40 years made them available for military service any time which also increased wars.
- The making of fighting or war a real professional job among the Zulu warriors by Shaka caused more wars as a means of survival which increased the Mfecane.
- The centralization of economic power by Shaka i.e. the King being the sole provider and controller of everything in the Zulu kingdom increased more wars in Zulu land.

- Shaka's policy of being the overall Commander-in-Chief of the army who led his warriors in the battle field gave them morale to fight and therefore they terrorized many tribes which increased trouble.
- Shaka's military genius or intelligence and rare qualities like being war-like set the stage for the Mfecane period.
- The war booty like the virgin girls and cows that were usually captured increased the warriors' morale of fighting and this increased wars in the region, hence leading to Mfecane.
- Shaka's attacks on the **Tlokwa** and **Ngweto** people caused the Mfecane. This was because the attacked people ran away and caused problems wherever they went.
- The death of **Nandi**, Shaka's mother in **1827** annoyed Shaka and made him to make a lot of irrational decisions. For example, he declared a year of national mourning and during this period the mourners were refused to cultivate, have sex and take pleasures like milk. This caused more suffering, hence the Mfecane.
- There was also the killing of over 7,000 innocent Zulu people for failure to mourn adequately which caused more confusion.
- The death of Shaka in **1828** robbed the kingdom of one of its strongest Kings. This gave rise to weak successors like **Dingane** and **Mpande** who got involved in power struggles that caused more trouble in Zulu land.
- **THE EFFECTS OF THE MFEKANE PERIOD**
- **How did the Mfecane affect the peoples of South Africa during the 19th Century?**
- Mfecane affected the peoples of South Africa both positively and negatively as shown below;
- It led to prolonged or constant wars between the Zulu and their neighbours.
- There was great loss of lives in Zulu land and the neighbouring areas.
- The death of people during the Mfecane resulted into **depopulation** in Natal, Orange Free State and Transvaal.
- Some leaders were killed during the Mfecane for example Dingiswayo, Zwede and later Shaka.
- Some weak tribes lost their land to the powerful and organized Kingdoms like Zulu state of Shaka, Mthethwa of Dingiswayo and Ndwandwe of Zwede.
- There was displacement as many people were forced into new lands and others became refugees.
- There was large scale migration of people from Zulu land as people were running away to safer areas like the Ngoni migration into East Africa and the Ndebele who moved to Central Africa.
- The migration of people from Zulu land created vacant land that later attracted the Boers into the interior which contributed to the Great Trek and the subsequent colonization of South Africa.
- There was population redistribution of the Bantu in South African areas to which people ran for safety and became overpopulated like Eastern Cape, Basuto land and Swaziland.

- It caused a lot of suffering and misery among people due to wars. For example, many people became refugees who kept on looking for survival like the Fingo
- There was loss of property due to the long periods of unrest or instability.
- There was breakdown of families and many people lost their family ties and they were absorbed into Zulu culture.
- There was disruption or weakening of societies as many people were conquered and absorbed by the Zulu kingdom under Shaka.
- There was a decline in agriculture as a result of the increased fighting as people could not settle down for cultivation. This led to famine that forced people to resort to cannibalism like the Fingo and Hlubi.
- Many societies lost their large herds of cattle due to the constant raiding especially by the Zulu warriors.
- Trade at Delagoa Bay came to a standstill due to the constant fighting, thus causing acute poverty in the region.
- There was increased slave raiding due to the wars.
- It led to a period of fear, insecurity and tension that characterised many societies in the region.
- The insecurity caused by the Mfecane forced people like the Basotho to concentrate and live in hilly areas that were safer.
- It led to the rise of new and stronger states or kingdoms like the Zulu, the Basuto and the Swazi. Some of these were formed as defensive states against expansion by their powerful neighbours.
- The rise of new states came with new powerful and admirable leaders like Mosheshe of the Basuto, Sobhuza I and Mswati of the Swazi, Shaka of the Zulu and Mzilikazi of the Ndebele among others who struggled to promote national unity among their people.
- There was establishment of standing armies by different societies so as to defend themselves against attacks.
- A new type of leadership emerged in South Africa and this was characterized by intelligent, brave and powerful leaders like Mosheshe of the Basuto, Sobhuza I and Mswati of the Swazi who could withstand the Mfecane period and its disturbance.
- The Zulu military tactics and weapons like the short stubbing spears, the cowhide shields as well as the "cowhorn method of attack" were copied by other societies like the Ndebele so as to defend themselves against wars.
- Fighting was improved as new methods of fighting were introduced and spread to a wider area.
- The neighbouring chiefs lost their authority to the powerful kingdoms like the Zulu under Shaka.
- It led to the intermarriage of people who were speaking different languages, thus leading to a common culture and unity.
- Due to the Mfecane, many societies were prepared to resist future European rule like the Xhosa, Zulu and Ndebele.
- **NATION BUILDING IN SOUTH AFRICA**
- **DINGISWAYO - THE WANDERER AND THE MTHETHWA STATE**

- **Describe the career and achievements of Dingiswayo.**
- **How did Dingiswayo build and expand the Mthethwa state by 1817**
- Dingiswayo was one of the Nguni chiefs who established large political units or chiefdoms in Northern Nguni land. He therefore was one of the greatest nation builders in South Africa.
- He was a son of **Jobe**, the Chief of the Mthethwa people.
- He was nicknamed the wanderer because he used to move from one state to another.
- Dingiswayo was an ambitious man who even planned to kill his father so as to gain early leadership of the Mthethwa and when his plan was discovered, he fled into the **Hlubi** mountains where he spent his youthful life.
- While in exile, he met a European Military Doctor known as **Robert Cowen** who became his friend. Robert Cowen taught him how to ride a horse and to use a gun.
- In **1797**, Dingiswayo returned home and deposed or overthrew his brother Mawawe and declared himself the king of the Mthethwa.
- Mawawe fled but was tricked to return and was later killed by Dingiswayo.
- **ACHIEVEMENTS OF DINGISWAYO**
- As a new king, Dingiswayo started by protecting his people against **Zwide** who was their greatest enemy. Zwide was the chief of the **Ndwandwe** people. He therefore built a strong army known as **Ntanga**. He divided this army into age regiments.
- Each regiment had its own set of defensive spears and shields provided by Dingiswayo.
- Initially, Dingiswayo's army was small in number comprising of about 500 soldiers but it later expanded.
- At first his army was not permanent but could easily be mobilized especially from the youths in case of war. However, it was later made permanent due to the increased wars in the region.
- He abolished initiation ceremonies like circumcision which would make his warriors to suffer full time.
- All the youths were supposed to join the regiments which were formed on age regiments and this encouraged tribal unity in his state.
- Through the regiments, he strengthened military efficiency (ability) and obedience to him since they fought together and shared common experiences.
- He expanded the Mthethwa state over 200 miles, defeated his neighbours and made them his subjects.
- Dingiswayo absorbed the conquered tribes and even recruited them into his army. These were used to defend his kingdom.
- The conquered tribes also paid tributes to Dingiswayo.
- He gave back captured cattle and other forms of wealth to the conquered people and he allowed them to retain their chiefs as long as they remained loyal to him. For example, **Senzagakona** remained the chief of the Zulu people.
- He also created social unity by marrying from different clans.
- Dingiswayo created friendship with the whites at **Delagoa Bay** where he was able to acquire more guns which he used against his neighbours.

- Dingiswayo always promoted his people on merit and talent. For example, Shaka was promoted as a regimental or military commander because he proved to be courageous and intelligent.
- He abolished the practice of traditional leaders commanding the army and he appointed his own men to do that.
- He relied on the advice of both the traditional leaders and military indunas or commanders to build his kingdom.
- He introduced wooden shields for his soldiers.
- He also introduced wooden shoes for his soldiers.
- Economically, Dingiswayo encouraged trade with the Europeans. He imported European goods and encouraged his people to buy them.
- He also developed the skin and hides industry which made his kingdom economically stronger.
- Dingiswayo laid a foundation for the establishment of the Zulu kingdom by preparing Shaka for the future leadership of the Zulu people.
- Dingiswayo was killed in **1818** by Chief Zwide's soldiers and his skull was taken to decorate the hut of **Ntombazi** Zwide's mother.
- In conclusion, by the time of his death, Dingiswayo had greatly expanded the Mthethwa into a large and powerful chiefdom.
- **PROBLEMS FACED BY DINGISWAYO OR REASONS FOR THE COLLAPSE OF THE MTHETHWA STATE**
- Dingiswayo had a family conflict because he had murdered his brother **Mawawe** who was the true successor to the throne. This therefore made the royal family to hate him.
- There was lack of tribal unity because the state had several tribes and this left the state weak, thus leading to its collapse.
- Shaka betrayed Dingiswayo when Zwide attacked the Mthethwa, hence he suffered constant attacks from Zwide.
- The wooden shields could not provide permanent protection against the enemies because they could easily be broken.
- Dingiswayo took long to have a permanent army for defence. This made it easy for the leaders of other states to attack him like Zwide of the Ndwandwe and Sobhuza I of the Ngwane (later Swazi).
- Dingiswayo also lacked a council or parliament to advise him and mostly depended on the traditional leaders and military commanders for advice.
- He spent a lot his time fighting neighbours and enemies.
- Dingiswayo's soldiers used bulky or heavier wooden shields which were difficult to carry, thus making movement difficult.
- The small states started breaking away from the bigger Mthethwa state due to the much freedom that he gave them to retain their leaders.
- The constant attacks from Zwide led to the loss of cows and also disrupted agriculture.
- He faced a problem of indisciplined warriors who wanted to take over power like Shaka.

- The increase in population in his state due to the open absorption resulted into land conflicts or endless wars which weakened the state.
- The rise of the Zulu state under Shaka challenged and eventually contributed to the decline of the Mthethwa state.
- **SHAKA AND THE ZULU STATE OR KINGDOM (1783-1828)**
- **THE ORIGIN OF THE ZULU NATION OR KINGDOM**
- Little is known about the origin of the Zulu nation. It is however known that it was started by the Bantu Speaking people in the Eastern coastal areas of South Africa i.e. the modern Natal province.
- The Zulu kingdom started as a small chiefdom probably under chief Senzangakona in the early 1700s.
- The Zulu kingdom started to change from a chiefdom in the time when Shaka took over leadership from his brother **Segujana** who had succeeded their father.
- Shaka was born in **1783**. His father was **Senzangakona** a chief of a small Zulu chiefdom and his mother was called **Nandi**.
- Shaka was born when his father was not circumcised, hence he was rejected by the royal family.
- He was therefore considered a **bastard** and **illegitimate** and was thus brought up by his mother and maternal uncles.
- Shaka had a miserable and unhappy childhood and was always harassed by his play mates because of his background.
- Shaka later grew to become a strong, courageous and determined man with a burning desire to revenge his humiliating or shameful background.
- During his youthful days, he joined Dingiswayo's army hence marking the start of his career as a soldier.
- In the army, he distinguished himself as a determined and intelligent soldier who was energetic, adventurous as well as brave hence making him popular in the army.
- Due to this, Dingiswayo promoted him to become one of his military commanders.
- In Dingiswayo's army, Shaka introduced several reforms like the short stabbing spear (Assegai), fighting barefooted and cow-horn formation.
- In **1816**, Shaka's father died and was succeeded by Shaka's brother called **Segujana**.
- With the help of his mentor – Chief Dingiswayo of the Mthethwa, Shaka attacked his father's chiefdom and killed his brother. This left the Zulu chiefdom entirely in the hands of Shaka.
- In 1818, Dingiswayo was killed by Zwide's warriors and Shaka took over the Mthethwa chiefdom and added it to the Zulu chiefdom after killing Dingiswayo's successor.
- Shaka fought and defeated the Ndwandwe under chief Zwide and took control of the Ndwandwe.
- Thereafter, Shaka conquered and assimilated a number of people into the Zulu community.

- He created a kingdom out of war which was located between the Drakensberg Mountains in the West and the Indian Ocean in the East, the Pongole River in the North and Tugela River in the South.
- He created a very large kingdom that covered 200,000 square miles and put in place a much organised political system.
- In short therefore, Shaka was the founder of the Zulu Kingdom in the first half of the 19th century.
- **FACTORS FOR THE RISE OF ZULU STATE**
- Little is known about the origin of the Zulu state but certainly the kingdom was founded by Shaka around 1818.
- It was founded in the modern Natal Province among the Northern Nguni or Bantu speaking people.
- It started as a small chiefdom of 24 square miles under Chief Senzangakona.
- Shaka the key figure in its foundation was born around 1783, his father was Senzangakona a chief of a small Zulu chiefdom and his mother was Nandi.
- The following factors led to the growth of the Zulu Kingdom;
- The strategic location of the Zulu in Natal province with access to the Indian Ocean helped the leaders to acquire guns which they used to conquer all the small states, hence leading to its rise.
- Natal also had fertile soils that enabled them to grow enough food hence ensuring food security in the area.
- The favourable climate with enough rainfall in the region attracted many Bantu settlers in the area because it was suitable for agriculture.
- The Zulu state was free from pests and diseases like malaria which enabled it to grow.
- The Zulu state was surrounded by weak neighbours like the Mthethwa and Ndwandwe and therefore they were not a threat to the rise of the Zulu kingdom.
- The Zulu kingdom had a strong economy of mixed farming whereby they grew crops such as millet, pumpkins and also kept animals like cattle, goats and sheep and this economy was able to support the kingdom for a long time.
- There was population explosion and land pressure in the area which caused wars of expansion.
- The presence of good and determined leaders like Shaka who was determined to build the state led to the establishment of the Zulu state.
- The introduction of several innovations changes resulted into the growth of the Zulu state. Such reforms included abolition of circumcision, total warfare, fighting barefooted, marrying at 40 years and absorption of the conquered youths into the army as well as establishment of a professional army which led to the establishment of a strong Zulu kingdom.
- The centralised system of government promoted law and order as well as effective control in the Zulu state.
- Shaka's joining of Dingiswayo's army enabled him to acquire military and leadership skills which he later used to create the Zulu state

- The death of Dingiswayo – chief of the Mthethwa in 1818 gave chance to Shaka to conquer the Mthethwa chiefdom which he annexed to the Zulu chiefdom so as to form a stronger kingdom.
- The occurrence of the Mfecane period that made people to run away led to the rise of the Zulu state. The migration of people during the Mfecane period left the Zulu as the only strong state in the area.
- The over centralisation of power by Shaka gave him an assured source of revenue for the kingdom.
- Trade with Europeans at Delagoa Bay gave him an assured source of revenue for the kingdom.
- The unity in the kingdom that was created through the age regimental system, uniform language and culture led to the rise of a strong Zulu Kingdom.
- The presence of strong standing army that was used to expand and protect the kingdom against external attacks was another factor for the rise of the Zulu state.
- **SHAKA'S ADMINISTRATIVE AND MILITARY REFORMS/CHANGES/ACHIEVEMENTS:**
 - Explain the reforms introduced by Shaka in Zulu Kingdom.
 - How was Shaka able to build and maintain a strong Zulu State?
 - How did Shaka's reforms transform the Zulu Kingdom?
 - How did Shaka's reforms affect the Zulu neighbors?
 - Account for the rise at the Zulu Kingdom.
 - Explain the methods used by Shaka to create a Zulu State up to 1828
 - Shaka created and maintained a powerful Zulu state using a number of reforms which included the following;
 - He introduced a strong standing army that was made up of full time professional soldiers that were ready for war any time.
 - He abolished the traditional long throwing spear and introduced the short stabbing spear known as Assegai which was more portable and effective.
 - The army of Shaka was divided into fighting groups known as the **Impis**.
 - He introduced age-regiments where boys of the same age were supposed to belong and train together.
 - He appointed military commanders called Induna to be in charge of each military regiment.
 - The Indunas (military commanders) were not supposed to organise any meeting without Shaka's knowledge or permission.
 - He abolished putting on the heavy wooden sandals because they reduced the speed of the fighters.
 - He maintained a high degree of discipline among his soldiers.
 - He introduced the the **"cow horn" method** of fighting. By this method, the enemy would be encircled and destroyed easily.
 - Shaka introduced tough or hard military training programmes for the soldiers to master the new methods of fighting. For example, he trained the soldiers to fight bare footed.

- Shaka abolished traditional customs like circumcision because they took a lot of time and weakened the soldiers.
- He forced his soldiers to live in special fighting camps or barracks under appointed Indunas, hence making them to be on standby.
- Shaka introduced women regiment warriors in his army. These would sometimes go for war and they also worked in gardens. This influenced the men warriors to work harder.
- Shaka extended the marriage period for soldiers up to 40 years and the soldiers had to first retire from the actual military service before they could get married. This made them to have enough time to fight and defend the kingdom.
- Shaka employed boy scouts to carry the weapons of the soldiers and this helped the soldiers to be fresh during the fighting.
- He formed a reserve army or force that was composed of retired soldiers and this made the kingdom to be strong all the time.
- To ensure that the army was in good condition all the time, doctors or medicine men were always present to take care or treat the wounded soldiers.
- Shaka introduced the assimilation policy where by the conquered young men were absorbed into Shaka's army which strengthened the Zulu army.
- Shaka employed women relatives to act as spies in the barracks in order to check on any rebellion by his commanders.
- He introduced the idea of total war fare (scorched earth policy). This exposed the enemies to starvation or lack of food, hence weakening them.
- He also employed religion as an instrument of unity and nation building. He was the chief priest and therefore he presided over all the traditional ceremonies in the Zulu kingdom.
- Shaka imposed the Zulu language and culture on the conquered people and they came to be known as the "Amazulu".
- Economically, Shaka centralised the economy and he put it in his hands especially trade and war booty.
- Shaka used dictatorship to create fear among his people i.e. he centralized all the political power in his hands which helped him to maintain the state.
- He also made administrative reforms. For example, he replaced the old traditional rulers with his military commanders known as **Indunas**.
- In his private life, Shaka never produced any child for fear of turning against him. He never loved women and even killed the pregnant women.
- Shaka replaced the chiefs of the conquered states with his own chiefs that he appointed and therefore the rulers in those states lost their power.
- He constantly trained his soldiers and made the army the source of his power.
- In short therefore, using the above reforms by the first half of 19th century, Shaka had transformed the Zulu chiefdom into a strong state.
- However, on the **24th December 1828**, Shaka was assassinated by his brother **Dingane** with the help of the Chief Induna **Mbopa** and Shaka's aunt **Mkabayi** and left behind a very large empire or kingdom eventually collapsed.
- **EFFECTS OF SHAKA'S CHANGES/WARS ON THE NEIGHBOURS**

- ***What were the effects of Shaka's expansion on his neighbours?***

- There was loss of lives due to the various wars created by Shaka's military conquest.
- A lot of property was destroyed due to Shaka's scorched earth policy.
- There was displacement of people in the neighbouring areas due to Shaka's wars.
- They led to the rise of strong leaders like Mzilikazi of the Ndebele, Sobhuza I of the Swazi to defend themselves against Shaka's expansion.
- There was reduced economic prosperity in the neighbouring areas because trade was affected by insecurity caused by Shaka's wars.
- The Zulu neighbours copied the Zulu military tactics like the "cow horn method".
- There was separation of families due to the constant wars created by Shaka's expansion.
- Many people became refugees while others migrated to other areas like the Ngoni and Ndebele.
- Families broke up due to the wars caused by Shaka.
- Many dangerous groups of thieves like the ***Fingo*** came up due to the insecurity created by Shaka's wars.
- There was formation of new strong states as a defence against the Zulu like the Basuto, the Swazi and the Ndebele.
- The conquered people lost their leaders like Zwile who was killed by Shaka.
- There was loss of independence by the neighbouring states like the Ndwandwe and the Mthethwa which were joined to the Zulu Kingdom.
- There was creation of vacuum land as people moved away hence this attracted the Boers into the interior.
- There was a lot of suffering and misery in the neighbouring areas due to Shaka's reforms.
- In conclusion, Shaka's reforms brought about a period of trouble in South Africa commonly known as the Mfecane.

- **PROBLEMS FACED BY SHAKA**

- ***What problems did Shaka face as the ruler of the Zulu State?***

- Lack of tribal unity because of the many people Shaka had conquered as some conquered people kept on demanding for their independence.
- Shaka was always attacked by his neighbours, thus making him to fight endless wars that weakened his kingdom.
- A lot of property was lost in the wars.
- Shaka's military changes were copied by his neighbours and used on him.
- His dictatorship was also hated by many people. As a result, some were forced to leave the area like the Ngoni under **Zwangendaba**.
- Shaka's empire grew too big and it became hard to administer.
- Shaka's brothers opposed him and wanted to take over power from him and on many occasions people wanted to kill him.
- He was like a refugee in his own country and therefore not treated properly.
- Shaka was so devastated by the death of his mother who took care of him.
- The British penetration in the interior weakened his kingdom.
- Shaka lost Natal to an Englishman called Farewell.

- Shaka's dictatorship caused the Mfecane and he was betrayed by his Indunas and killed by his brother known as Dingane in 1828.
- **THE ORGANISATION OF THE ZULU STATE**
- *How was the Zulu kingdom organised in the early 19th century?*
- **Politically:**
- The Zulu were a highly centralised state or kingdom headed by a military king who had absolute or overall powers.
- The king was assisted by an advisory council and Indunas who were appointed from the commanders.
- The king was always helped by the Chief Induna in the day today administration of the kingdom.
- The Chief Induna was the second most feared man in the land.
- The army was kept and maintained in a military settlement or barracks like Nabanda and Mbelebele
- The military settlements were placed under military chiefs known as the **Indunas**. The Indunas were appointed by the king himself and were promoted on merit and their capability.
- The Indunas were not allowed to hold any meeting without the knowledge of the king.
- Each military settlement contained a section of royal women under a senior woman and those acted as spies on the Indunas. Most of them were related to the king.
- Female regiments existed for the provision of labour in the gardens and young boys carried spears and shields for the active warriors.
- The retired soldiers formed a reserve army, this provided food to active soldiers.
- The retired soldiers formed a reserve army and this provided food to active soldiers.
- Leadership or succession to the throne was hereditary from the father to the son.
- The Zulu kingdom was organised on age regiments whose members belonged to the same age. They stayed together in military camps up to the age of 40 years after which they were allowed to marry.
- The kingdom was composed of the conquered areas which formed the outer provinces of the Zulu state and it was put under royal chiefs.
- The conquered chiefs remained rulers as long as they were loyal to Shaka.
- **(b)Economically:**
- The economy was also centralised and controlled by the king who owned all the property in the kingdom including land and war booty and it was the king to distribute this wealth to his people.
- The king controlled the whole economy within the kingdom i.e. all wealth (war booty) belonged to him and his warriors.
- The Zulu carried out trade with the foreigners like the Portuguese at Delagoa Bay where they exchanged ivory, hides and skins for European goods like glass and clothes.
- They also carried out iron working and produced weapons like pangas, spears and arrows which they used for both domestic and military purposes.

- They carried out mixed farming (agriculture) and grew crops like millet, beans and yams as well as keeping animals like cattle. These were highly respected as a sign of wealth and dowry as well as providing them with food, hides, milk and butter.
- It was the responsibility of the age regiment to produce food and rear animals
- There was massive raiding, plunder and looting of neighbours, in fact during Shaka's time, looting became the main economic activity. They would raid their neighbours also for food and ivory.
- The retired soldiers among the Zulu helped much in the production of food to support the active soldiers.
- Hunting was also carried out to get meat, ivory, hides and skins.
- The Zulu also carried out fishing as an important activity.
- Gathering was another economic activity among the Zulu people.
- The conquered states paid tribute to the king in form of cattle and ivory which also strengthened the economy.
- **(c)Socially;**
- The Zulu kingdom or state was highly centralised and the king controlled all the social affairs and therefore he was the highest social figure in the kingdom.
- He was the spiritual and religious leader of the Zulu who presided over all the traditional, religious and other ceremonies such as the first fruit ceremony which was attended by all the people in Zululand. These ceremonies enhanced unity and loyalty to the king.
- Age regiments formed the basis of socialization and initiation ceremonies like circumcision were organised to mark their entry. However, during Shaka's regime he abolished circumcision.
- Age regiments were converted into military regiments each with its own colour and each had its own cattle for feeding its members.
- During Shaka's reign, marriage was strictly at the age of 40 years and female age regiments of an appropriate age would be dissolved so that the soldiers would pick wives from them.
- Polygamy was common as well as the existence of exogamous marriages.
- The young male captives were absorbed into the Zulu army, the very young ones looked after cattle and the very old ones and disabled were always killed.
- The conquered girls and women worked in the gardens to produce food for the soldiers.
- The Zulu worshipped their gods and the most important one was the "god of wars".
- The Zulu society was divided into the royal family and the commoners (Amazulu).
- In conclusion, the arrival of whites disorganised the above political, social and economic set up of the Zulu kingdom.
- **THE ZULU KINGDOM AFTER SHAKA**
- Shaka, the founder of the Zulu Kingdom was assassinated or killed in **1828** by his brothers **Dingane** and **Mhlangana** with the help of Shaka's most trusted or chief Induna Mbopa.
- Shaka was killed while his warriors had gone for the Gaza raid. He was therefore succeeded by Dingane.

- **THE RULE OF DINGANE (1828 – 1840)**

- *Describe the achievements of Dingane for the Zulu Kingdom between 1828 and 1840?*
- Dingane was a son of **Senzangakona** and therefore a brother to Shaka.
- After the death of Shaka, Dingane and Mhlangana shared power with the support of the Chief Induna.
- Dingane later turned and killed his brother Mhlangana and became a full ruler of the Zulu kingdom.
- When he took over power in 1828, he managed to prevent a palace coup at the royal house. When the Zulu army returned, he promised them peace and because the soldiers were tired of fighting, this made them happy and therefore, they accepted Dingane as their new king.
- Unlike Shaka, Dingane did not want to get involved in wars and therefore he abolished the regular military training, stopped the formation of age regiments and even allowed soldiers to marry before 40 years.
- Dingane first suspended all military expeditions, hence making the army very idle and therefore most of them started to escape to Natal to work on the sugar plantations.
- When Dingane discovered that the warriors were leaving the kingdom, he revived the formation of age regiments and also ordered new attacks against the neighbours such as the Pondo, Ndebele and Ngwane (Swazi).
- He also allowed the soldiers to raid cattle and get other forms of wealth from the neighbours.
- During the period 1828 – 1840, the number of whites (Europeans) increased in Zulu land which worried Dingane so much.
- Dingane tried to acquire guns from the whites but he failed.
- Dingane had a friendly but unhappy relationship with the whites. He signed an agreement with **Captain Allen Gardiner** who had authority over the whites in Natal to return the Zulu warriors who had gone to work in Natal.
- The British accepted to do so on condition that Dingane gives permission to the missionaries to work in Zululand and also give part of Zulu land for the British settlement.
- After 1835, Dingane also faced the Boer trekkers under Piet Retief who were looking for land and this resulted into conflicts with Dingane.
- After 1835 Dingane was faced with the Boer trekkers under Piet Retief who were looking for land and this resulted into conflicts with Dingane
- In 1837, they arrived at Dingane's home in Natal and asked the Zulu leader for land. Dingane promised them land on condition that they brought back his cows that had been stolen by the Tlokwa chief Sekonyera.
- After recovering the cows, Dingane ordered the murder of Piet Retief and his people at a beer party while celebrating the victory against Sekonyera.
- Andries Pretorius, the new Boer leader organised a revenge battle in **October 1838** known as the **Battle of Blood River** in which the Zulu were defeated. He was

forced to make an agreement with the Boers that gave away the district of Natal to the Boers in 1840.

- Dingane was deposed or overthrown by his brother Mpande with help of the Boers.
- He later fled to Swaziland where he was killed for his earlier crimes on the Swazi.
- **PROBLEMS FACED BY DINGANE**
- Dingane lacked support from the Zulu royal family because he was very brutal to the extent of killing his brother **Mhlangana** and Shaka's chief Induna.
- He had peaceful ways of doing things and he did not want to get involved in wars like Shaka and this made the militant Zulu warriors to hate him.
- He made the soldiers idle by stopping regular raids and this made most of the warriors to desert the army and move to Natal to seek for employment on the Natal sugar cane plantations.
- He personally loved feasting, dancing and women more than attending to government duties and because of this, the traditional Zulu rulers started encouraging warriors to cross to Mpande's side.
- The coming of the whites (the British and Boers) to Zulu land created pressure on land, hence leading to conflicts.
- The period of peace during his rule led to increase in population in Zulu land and this resulted into conflicts among the Zulu people.
- He was hated by the neighbours like the Swazi because of his earlier attacks on them. They therefore decided to support the Boers to overthrow Dingane.
- Mpande (his brother) kept encouraging the warriors and members of the royal family to support him to overthrow Dingane.
- He had a problem of the Boer interference into the politics of the Zulu kingdom by supporting his brother Mpande.
- The killing of Piet Retief resulted into the Battle of Blood River where Dingane was defeated and this weakened the Zulu kingdom.
- The British also grabbed the Zulu land in exchange for a Zulu soldier and this weakened his government.
- In 1840, the Zulu royal family overthrew Dingane and installed his brother Mpande on the throne.
- **THE RULE OF MPANDE (1840 – 1872)**
- ***Describe the contribution of Mpande to the history of South Africa.***
- Mpande was a son of Senzangakona and thus a half-brother of Shaka and a brother of Dingane.
- He had a dull youthful time until Dingane started messing up the Zulu state.
- He collaborated with Boers after the defeat of Dingane at the Blood River Battle in 1838 and carried out a civil war against him (Dingane).
- With the help of the Boers and the support of the Zulu royal family, he overthrew Dingane and he was crowned Zulu king in 1840. He therefore ruled for 32 years.
- During his regime, there was a big improvement in the Zulu relationship with the whites especially the Boers because they assisted him to come to power and therefore this prevented wars between the two groups for some time.

- Mpande as a new king failed to bring back the Zulu military glory that had been created by Shaka and therefore he was considered to be a weak leader and hated by the Zulu youths.
- He was even hated more than Dingane because he feared going for wars and this made the warriors idle and redundant.
- Just like Dingane, he also enjoyed feasting and being carried around by the cart than working or performing government duties.
- The peace during his rule increased the Zulu's population due to the return of the refugees.
- However, with increase of people, there was no room for further expansion.
- Mpande's peaceful ways made the Boers to start interfering in the Zulu politics.
- He even gave the Boers the Blood River territory for helping him to overthrow Dingane in 1840, hence weakening the Zulu kingdom.
- Mpande failed to revive the age regiments and this made his sons to long for his death. His two eldest sons **Cetewayo** and **Mbulazi** started fighting for the throne even before their father's death.
- In 1856, Cetewayo defeated his brother and even killed him. He therefore waited to take over power once his father dies.
- Mpande eventually died in **1872** and he was succeeded by his son Cetewayo.
- **PROBLEMS FACED BY MPANDE:**
- Mpande had a lot of pressure from the Boers who demanded for half of the Zulu fertile land for their settlement and this brought about conflicts between the Boers and the Zulu people.
- His character was a problem. Just like Dingane, Mpande was not a serious leader and he preferred dancing, women and feasting to state duties which greatly weakened the Zulu Kingdom.
- Mpande failed to control the civil wars between his two eldest sons Cetewayo and Mbulazi which divided the Zulu royal family and the ordinary people, hence contributing to the weakness of the Zulu kingdom.
- The British citizens in Zulu land especially Natal also started demanding for more land for their settlement and this was not welcomed by the Zulu people.
- The increased population in Zulu land resulted into land shortage and yet the whites kept on asking for more land.
- Mpande lacked support from the Zulu people because of his peaceful character and this earned him a lot of hatred as he was considered to be a weak leader.
- He encouraged Boer interference into Zulu politics, thus dividing up the state and the royal family because some Zulu people did not support his association with Boers thus weakening the state.
- He gave the Boers half of the fertile land in Zulu land i.e. the Blood River territory. This made his people to hate him because he had made them landless.
- He neglected the military regiments left by Shaka which annoyed the Zulu warriors or soldiers. This was because he did not want to go for wars especially with the whites.

- He failed to arm the Zulu army with stronger weapons which also annoyed the Zulu warriors.
- There was also the rise of British imperialism during his rule as the British officers like **Sir Theophilus Shepstone** picked interest in the Zulu affairs.
- **WHY DINGANE WAS DEFEATED BY HIS BROTHER MPANDE.**
- Mpande got support from the Boers and this helped him to defeat Dingane.
- He failed to maintain tribal unity in the kingdom.
- The local rulers started inciting warriors to run to Mpande's side.
- His hatred for wars was unpopular among the warlike Zulu soldiers.
- His relaxation of military discipline and disbanding some of the age regiments made him to be defeated by his brother.
- His failure to convince Gardiner to return all the Zulu refugees also led to his defeat.
- His brutal rule made him another Shaka.
- His preference for feasting, dancing and women made him unpopular.
- The royal family stopped supporting him in 1840.
- Mpande's collaboration with the Boers led to the eventual defeat of Dingane.
- The increasing scarcity of land as he gave away more land to the whites annoyed the people.
- **CETEWAYO AS THE ZULU KING (1872 – 1884)**
- **Describe the achievements of Cetewayo for the Zulu people.**
- Cetewayo was a son of Mpande and therefore a nephew to Shaka.
- He was an intelligent and ambitious man who wanted to restore the Zulu glory that was started by Shaka but destroyed by Dingane and Mpande.
- Cetewayo and Mbulazi were involved in a civil war over the succession of their father.
- He started gaining fame in **1856** after defeating his brother Mbulazi. This victory assured him of being the next king to the Zulu throne.
- He began being active politically after the death of his father in **1872**.
- He was officially installed or crowned as ruler of Zulu kingdom in **1873** by the Natal's Secretary for Native Affairs, **Sir Theophilus Shepstone**.
- His first priority was to revive the Zulu military strength. He therefore started by militarising the Zulu kingdom. For example, he restored the recruitment and training of the age regiments which increased the spirit of nationalism and unity among the Zulu.
- He started organising raids against the neighbours to make the Zulu warriors active.
- He also established good relationship with the Portuguese in order to acquire fire arms from them so as to defend his territory against the whites.
- He also encouraged trade with the Portuguese in Mozambique hence enabling him to acquire guns from them.
- He was a peaceful ruler who tried to keep the Zulu a peaceful state.
- In fact, in the first years, he avoided wars with the Boers and the British and this created peace in Zulu land for some time.

- Cetewayo managed to keep the Zulu Independence up to 1879. In **January 1879**, the British invaded Zulu land and this resulted into the **Battle of Isandhlwana** between the British and the Zulu. The Zulu were able to defeat the British.
- The British were however determined to destroy the Zulu nation. Therefore, on **4th July** the same year (1879), the British again made another attack on the Zulu state after re-organising themselves and this resulted into the **Battle of Ulundi** in which the Zulu under Cetewayo were defeated.
- Cetewayo was captured and taken to the Cape Town and later exiled to London **1882**. The capture of Cetewayo did not stop the Zulu from attacking the British.
- They continued fighting the British demanding for the return of their king Cetewayo. When the British realised that the Zulu people were not giving up, they decided to bring back Cetewayo but with limited powers.
- Cetewayo could not do much because the British were now in control of Zulu land and failed to re-organise the age regiments because of the British.
- He died a disappointed man in **1884** and he was succeeded by his son **Dinizuli**.
- **PROBLEMS FACED BY CETEWAYO:**
- ***Explain the problems faced by Cetewayo by 1879.***
- Cetewayo faced a number of problems during his regime both internally and externally which included the following;
- He faced a problem of Boer expansion from the North and the South and this affected the political stability of the Zulu Kingdom.
- During Cetewayo's regime, the period of scramble and partition of African states had increased and the whites especially the British were determined to take over the Zulu land.
- The forty years after Shaka and before Cetewayo were messed up by Dingane and Mpande and a lot of property and lives were destroyed. This affected Cetewayo's regime.
- Cetewayo had a problem with the Zulu army and age regiments which were no longer functioning as they used to be during Shaka's regime because Dingane and Mpande made the warriors idle and many of them moved to Natal to look for employment.
- His army also had poor fighting weapons such as spears as compared to the enemies who had guns.
- Cetewayo was faced with pressure from the Zulu youths who wanted to attack the whites who were stealing their land.
- The civil war between him and his brother Mbulazi was another problem.
- His rule was faced with natural disasters like drought and famine.
- The influence of the missionaries in Zulu land divided the people along religious lines and this was a big problem to Cetewayo because he failed to unite them.
- In 1878, he failed to contain the youth who chased two adulterous women into British – Natal.
- The Zulu population had increased yet there was shortage of land because the whites had taken over most of the land and this caused conflicts between the Zulu and the whites.

- The Swazi were also enemies of the Zulu at the time his nation was hit by a serious famine in 1876.
- The whites looked at him suspiciously and never trusted him. For example, he had a bad relationship with the British High Commissioner or Cape Governor, **Sir Bartle Frere** who destroyed the Zulu state and continued to attack the Zulu.
- Because of Bartle Frere's desire to destroy Zulu military regiments and army, he ordered Cetewayo to disarm and destroy the regiments and when Cetewayo refused, Frere attacked the Zulu nation in the **Battle of Isandhlwana** in January 1879.
- On 4th July the same year, Cetewayo was defeated at the **Battle of Ulundi**.
- The defeat of the Zulu in the Battle of Ulundi made Cetewayo to leave the Zulu state and his state was also divided up into 13 units or districts each under a separate chief.
- By the time he returned, his powers had been reduced and he had no say in the Zulu affairs because it was in the hands of the British.
- Cetewayo fled to a reserve where he died in 1884 and he was succeeded by his son called **Dinizulu**.
- **HOW THE ABOVE PROBLEMS WERE SOLVED BY CETEWAYO:**
- He reformed the age regiments and created a strong standing army that had died during Mpande's time.
- He raised a big force for defensive purposes and revived the Zulu militarism and imparted courage among his warriors.
- He brought back the Zulu self-confidence and a spirit of nationalism.
- He also brought back the Zulu military tactics like the cow-horn formation as well as surprise attacks.
- He made the Zulu more aggressive and he held two coronation ceremonies to please the whites and traditionalists.
- He befriended the British in order to defeat the Boers and he reversed Mpande's peaceful policies.
- He used the British to solve his misunderstandings with the Boers in the Blood River territory.
- He acquired guns from Mozambique and encouraged trade with the Portuguese there.
- He even defeated the British forces at Isandhlwana in January 1879 and captured all their guns. This delayed the federation plans.
- He sought refuge in a reserve after losing the support of his people.
- **THE DECLINE OR FALL OF THE ZULU STATE**
- What factors led to the collapse of the Zulu kingdom in the second half of the 19th century?
- Why did the Zulu kingdom decline in the second half of the 19th century?
- The Zulu kingdom collapsed in **1879** after the British defeat at **Ulundi**. The decline of this state was a long term process dating back from Shaka's days. This was due to the following factors;

- Shaka's brutality forced many of his capable commanders to run away like **Zwangendaba** and **Mzilikazi**.
- Shaka's harsh rule also contributed to the decline of the Zulu state because he forced many people to run away. For example, many people were killed when his mother died and this greatly weakened the kingdom.
- The Mfecane period also brought a lot of suffering or misery and this also weakened the Zulu kingdom. It also created depopulation which invited the Boers into the vacuum Zulu land.
- The death of Shaka in 1828 robbed the Zulu state of its great ruler who would have defended the kingdom against the foreign invaders.
- The leaders who took over after Shaka (his successors) like Mpande and Dingane were militarily weak and therefore they failed to manage the kingdom properly, hence leading to its decline.
- They went ahead and even neglected the military regiments that had been the source of the Zulu strength.
- There were also succession disputes or conflicts after the death of Shaka which weakened the empire for example between Dingane and Mpande as well as Cetewayo and Mbulazi.
- The reduction in the discipline of the Zulu soldiers after Shaka's death made many soldiers to move to Natal and this weakened the state.
- The Great Trek which resulted into the Boer expansion into Zulu land with modern weapons threatened the kingdom. For example, the Boers defeated the Zulu at the Battle of Blood River in 1838 and took a lot of land and cattle.
- The conquered people hated the Zulu for having killed their ancestors. Many even started demanding for independence after the death of Shaka which weakened the kingdom.
- The influence of the missionaries who preached against the Zulu traditions and customs reduced the respect of people towards their leaders.
- The collaboration or friendship of some Zulu leaders with the Europeans like Mpande with the Boers brought the foreigners into the Zulu politics which led to its decline.
- The discovery of minerals in South Africa such as Gold and Diamond led to the migration of the Zulu youths to the mining areas and this weakened the regiments, hence leading to the Zulu state.
- The conquered states also started demanding for their independence and they became rebellious, leading to the decline of the Zulu state.
- The state was attacked by natural calamities such as epidemic diseases like the Rinder Pest disease which killed many of their cattle. This weakened the economy of the Zulu kingdom, hence contributing to the decline of the state.
- The neighbouring states copied the Zulu or Shaka's military tactics and weapons and they used them against the Zulu state, thus leading to its decline.
- The period of the Scramble for Africa was going on and therefore, there was no way Zulu land could survive European colonisation.
- The increase in population with the coming of the whites led to land conflicts which weakened the Zulu state.

- The Zulu were economically weak at that time compared to the British.
- The Zulu state had bitter relations with the neighbours that led to endless wars which forced the neighbours to support the Zulu enemies. For example, the Swazi supported the British against the Zulu kingdom in **1879** which made it easy for the British to defeat the Zulu.
- The division of the Zulu state into 13 districts or principalities by the British weakened the Zulu kingdom and therefore led to its final collapse.
- **THE ZULU RESPONSE TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE BRITISH COLONIALISM**
- **THE FIRST ANGLO-ZULU WAR OF 1879:**
- The war took place between the Zulu and the British in 1879.
- The Zulu were led by Cetewayo and the British by **Sir Bartle Frere**, the British High Commissioner or Cape Governor. This war was fought in two battles.
- The first battle was the **Battle of Isandhlwana** in **January 1879**, followed by the one of **Ulundi** in **July 1879** where the Zulu were defeated.
- **CAUSES OF THE WAR:**
- Cetewayo's determination to restore the Zulu military strength and glory or fame which had been lost by Mpande's peaceful policy brought him into conflict with the British.
- The loss of land by the Zulu which had been given to the Boers in Transvaal by the British made the Zulu people fight for their land.
- Cetewayo's desire to protect the Zulu independence which had been undermined by the British and Boers also resulted into war.
- The revival of the Zulu military regiments by Cetewayo which strengthened the Zulu army threatened the British position hence forcing them to attack the Zulu in 1879.
- The failure by Cetewayo to disarm and disband the army of about 30,000 men threatened the British and therefore, they decided to declare war on the Zulu in 1879.
- The refusal of Cetewayo to ban his age regiments and the army of about 30,000 soldiers threatened the British hence force them to declare wars on the Zulu in 1879.
- The British also thought that it would be **prestigious** to defeat and dominate the Zulu.
- The long term enmity between the whites and Africans in South Africa also resulted into Anglo-Zulu wars in 1879.
- The character or personality of Cetewayo and Sir Bartle Frere were uncompromising and never respected peaceful means to settle conflicts which resulted into Anglo-Zulu wars of 1879.
- The digging of trenches, increased training and singing of anti-European war songs forced the British to declare war on the Zulu.
- The rumours at the Cape that some white missionaries had been killed in Zulu land and others had been stopped from operating made the British to attack the Zulu.
- The British feared that Zulu would attack and take over Transvaal since it was still very weak militarily which caused war.

- **EFFECTS OF THE FIRST ANGLO-ZULU WAR OF 1879**

- The Zulu were defeated in the **Battle of Ulundi** in July 1879 and they lost their independence to the British.
- Cetewayo was overthrown and taken to the Cape and eventually taken to exile in London in 1882.
- The war disorganised the Zulu economy leading to poverty and misery.
- The Zulu kingdom was divided into 13 (thirteen) districts and this greatly weakened the kingdom. Each district was under a chief who was appointed by the British.
- The traditional rulers lost their power after the war. For example, **Dinizulu** who succeeded Cetewayo was demoted to a village chief.
- The rebellion also resulted into the destruction of properties like houses and animals.
- It also resulted into loss of lives on both sides (the whites and Africans) which led to **depopulation**.
- The Zulu lost their land to the whites and they were pushed into reserves.
- The rebellion laid foundation for other rebellions in future such as **Bambata** rebellion of 1906.
- What were the causes of the Anglo-Zulu wars of 1879?
- How did the Zulu react to the establishment of colonial rule in 1879?

- **THE SECOND ANGLO-ZULU WAR OF 1906 OR THE BAMBATA REBELLION OF 1906**

- **What led to the Bambata rebellion?**
- **What were the effects of this rebellion?**
- This was the war between the British and the Zulu.
- It took place in **1906**.
- It was also called the Anglo-Zulu war of 1906 or the Second Anglo-Zulu War.
- The rebellion was led by **Chief Bambata**, an Induna from the **Zondi** clan hence the name Bambata rebellion. It therefore took place mainly among the **Zondi people** of Zulu land.
- It took place during the reign of **King Dinizulu** of the Zulu.
- **CAUSES OF THE REBELLION:**
- The causes of the war or rebellion included the following;
- The disintegration of the Zulu nation in 1879 i.e. the division of the Kingdom into 13 units or districts by the British after the defeat of Cetewayo in first Anglo-Zulu war of 1879 annoyed Bambata and other Zulu members, hence making them to rebel against the British.
- In addition, the exiling of Cetewayo by the British in **1882** annoyed the Zulu, hence causing war.
- The British had grabbed the Zulu land which caused a lot of hatred towards the British. Therefore, the Zulu wanted to recover their land that had been taken by the British.
- The creation of reserves in Zulu land annoyed the Zulu. This was because the Africans were subjected to poor living conditions in the reserves.

- The increased land rent caused the war. The Zulu had been made tenants on their own land and were forced to pay rent on it by the British which annoyed them.
- Also in 1879, the British Natal was allowed to administer Zulu land which the Zulu hated. This was because the British had annexed Zulu land to Natal province.
- The racial discrimination practiced by the British also annoyed the Zulu and made them to rebel. This was because they considered the whites to be superior and the Africans inferior.
- The rise of Independent Churches in South Africa with a slogan "**Africa for Africans**" encouraged the Zulu to rise up against the British colonial rule and the activities of the white missionaries.
- In addition, the panic of the British government that carried out massive arrests and imprisonment of innocent people regarded to be followers of "Ethiopian Independent Church" annoyed the Zulu, hence forcing them to rise up.
- Heavy taxation caused the war or rebellion. For example, the Zulu were required to pay the poll tax among other taxes which annoyed them since they were not used to paying tax.
- In addition, the brutal or harsh methods of levying and collecting taxes like public flogging or canning and imprisonment annoyed the Zulu, hence causing the war.
- Forced labour caused the rebellion. The Zulu were forced to provide labour on the European building projects like roads and communal farms under poor conditions which made the Zulu to rebel.
- They were given low wages or low pay and worked under very strict and poor conditions.
- The long term mistrust and suspicion (enmity) between Zulu and the whites or British made the Zulu to rebel against the British colonial rule, hence causing the war.
- The need for the Zulu to regain their independence which had been taken away by the British in **1879** caused the rebellion.
- The loss of traditional powers by the Zulu Kings and chiefs caused the war. The British never respected the Zulu leaders at all. For example, Dinizulu who was a king was demoted by the British to a mere headman which annoyed the Zulu.
- The poor military record of British caused the war. For example, the Zulu earlier success at **Isandhlwana** in **January 1879** against the British encouraged them to rise up. Also, the defeat of the British by the Boers in the **Jameson Raid of 1895** inspired the Zulu to fight them.
- The British poor or mal-administration caused the war. For example, the British introduced harsh laws where the Africans had no right to move from one place to another which annoyed them.
- The able leadership provided by **Chief Bambata** also inspired or encouraged the Zulu to fight the British in 1906.
- The brutal execution or killing of twelve key Zulu leaders in early 1906 by the British officials because of the refusal to pay poll taxes further annoyed the Zulu, hence forcing them to rise up against the British.

- The early success of Bambata against the British gave morale to the Zulu to fight against the British.
- The mistaken identity caused the war. Traditionally, the Zulu mistook all whites for ***Mlungu*** which meant devils, sea monsters or “wizards”.
- The failure of peaceful means to end the conflicts between the Zulu and the British finally caused war by 1906.
- The minor protest against taxes of **1905** and the ruthless harsh government behaviour caused the war. For example, there was heavy government deployment of troops as well as confiscation of land and cattle which annoyed the Zulu, hence forcing them to rise up in 1906.
- The Second Anglo-Boer War of **1899-1902** caused the Bambata war. After this war, the Zulu thought that the British were exhausted and therefore they wanted to take advantage of this weakness.
- The poor social and economic conditions under which the Africans lived in towns like poverty and insecurity were blamed on the whites, hence forcing them to rise up.
- The Zulu hated the activities of the missionaries who never respected their culture and divided them up.
- The outbreak of diseases like rinderpest disease was blamed on the British, hence forcing the Zulu to rebel against British rule. To make matters worse, the British were killing the infected animals or cattle instead of allowing the Zulu to eat them.
- The outbreak of natural calamities like the wide spread drought and famine also created a need for war in order to loot or steal food from the British.
- The increased British imperialism and the desire to control the whole of South Africa also led to conflicts with the Zulu which finally caused the Bambata rebellion of 1906.
- The increased number of whites in Zulu land made the Africans to feel frustrated and insecure in their own land which increased their spirit of resistance which finally caused war.
- The revival of the Zulu militarism like the age regiments and other reforms gave morale to the Zulu to rise up against the British in 1906.
- The Zulu had lost their cattle, which had been taken by the British and this annoyed them.
- **EFFECTS OF THE BAMBATA REBELLION OF 1906**
- The Zulu were defeated in the war by the British.
- Bambata the leader of the rebellion was captured and killed in 1906.
- The Zulu nation lost its independence and completely taken over by the British.
- There was disintegration of Zulu kingdom into small communities.
- The Zulu militarism was completely destroyed by the British.
- King Dinizulu was arrested in **1907** because he was suspected of having supported the rebellion.
- There was loss of lives, thus leading to **depopulation** as three thousand Africans and thirty two whites were killed during the course of the war.
- There was a decline in agriculture, thus leading to famine as the Zulu concentrated on fighting instead of farming (agriculture).

- Trade also declined because of the war, thus contributing to economic decline in Zulu land.
- There was destruction of property for both the whites and the Africans.
- It led to the loss of cattle due to cattle diseases and looting. This led to poverty among the Zulu.
- The Africans lost more land and they were displaced or pushed into reserves.
- In the reserves, they lived under poor conditions which increased their misery and suffering.
- The Zulu were forced to continue paying taxes after the rebellion.
- The Zulu also continued to provide labour and therefore they became permanent servants on the white or European farms for survival.
- The traditional leaders lost their traditional authority and they accepted the British rule.
- The Africans lost trust and confidence in the traditional beliefs and many adopted Christianity.
- The British racial discrimination increased as the Zulu were made second class citizens.
- The failure of the rebellion forced the Africans to change to other forms of resistance and constitutional or **peaceful** means so as to regain their independence. Therefore, the Africans learnt a lesson that the British were militarily stronger.
- It encouraged the growth of Independent Churches in Zulu land due to the dogma or slogan of "Africa for Africans" which had been used to mobilize the Zulu against the British.
- There was increased unity among the Zulu.
- It laid ground for future African nationalism in South Africa. For example, it paved way for the formation of mass political parties like the **Inkatha Freedom Party** and the **African National Congress (ANC)** so as to regain African independence.
- The British learnt a lesson and made some administrative reforms to avoid further uprisings. For example, in **1908** a bill was passed that allowed **four whites** to represent the Africans in the Legislative Council or Parliament.
- The war indirectly contributed to the **Union of South Africa** in **1910** because the whites (British and Boers) feared the Africans.
- **REASONS WHY THE BAMBATA REBELLION OF 1906 FAILED**
- The lack of unity among the Africans led to their defeat.
- The determination of the British to colonise the Zulu state at all costs led to the defeat of the Africans in the Bambata rebellion of 1906.
- The African had inferior weapons which they used for fighting like spears which could not defeat the British who used advanced weapons like the guns.
- The Africans lacked strong leaders to lead them against the British.
- The natural calamities like famine weakened the Africans, hence making them unable to defeat the British in 1906.
- The Africans lacked a strong economy to finance a major war against the economically powerful British colonialists.
- The lack of assistance from the Zulu neighbours also led to their defeat.

- The outbreak of diseases like malaria also weakened the Zulu, hence leading to their defeat.
- The arrest and killing of the Zulu leader weakened them, hence leading to their defeat.
- The false belief in traditional religion by the Africans led to their defeat since it failed to defend them against the British.
- **THE FORMATION OF NEW DEFENSIVE STATES AFTER THE MFECANE PERIOD**
- **THE BASUTO (BASOTHO) STATE OR NATION**
- What were the origins of Sotho state?
- Explain/describe the origins of Basuto state.
- **THE ORIGIN OF THE BASUTO STATE:**
- The Basuto or Sotho state is the present day or modern state of Lesotho which is found in the South Eastern part of South Africa.
- This state was an outcome of the Mfecane period i.e. it was built as a defensive state during the Mfecane period or wars and it was established between 1815 and 1870.
- It was also called the mountainous kingdom because of its geographical landscape which had a lot of mountains.
- The founders of this kingdom were Bantu speakers who migrated from West or Central Africa.
- It was formerly an area occupied by the Khoisan and later the Bantu speaking people.
- It was created by an outstanding leader called Mosheshe or MoshoeShoe.
- Little is known about its early background and therefore its origin is not clear to historians.
- **Mosheshe** who is believed to have founded this state was born in around **1786** to **Mokachane** who was a minor chief among the **Kwena** people.
- Mosheshe is said to have belonged to the **Makoteli clan** of the **Kwena tribe**.
- During the Mfecane days, Mosheshe became prominent as a notorious cattle raider.
- He even had a technique of shaving his captured cattle in order to distinguish them from others, hence the name Mosheshe which meant the "shaver".
- He was groomed and raised by chief **Mtoloni** of the Kwena tribe as an exceptional young boy who was adventurous, intelligent, patient, brave and determined. These qualities prepared him for future leadership.
- He therefore acquired lots of skills and experience about empire or nation building and management from his guardian Mtoloni.
- After the death of Chief Mtoloni in 1815, Mosheshe succeeded him.
- Before Mfecane, there was no state called Sotho. There only existed independent clans and chiefdoms. However, by 1815 Mosheshe had started building the Basuto state after succeeding Chief Mtoloni.
- The state was first established at Butha-Buthe but it was later transferred or relocated to Thaba-Busiu.

- Mosheshe became a great ruler of his time because of his unique skills in nation or state building like welcoming refugees, building a confederation state etc.
- Mosheshe ruled Basuto land from 1815 – 1870.
- **METHODS USED BY MOSHESHE TO BUILD A STRONG BASUTO STATE**
- How did Mosheshe build the Sotho Nation?
- What factors were responsible for the raise and expansion of Basuto Kingdom?
- Explain the methods used by Mosheshe to build the Basuto state.
- For defence purposes, Mosheshe established the capital cities of the Basuto nation on hill tops where he could easily view his enemies and the first was established at **ButhaButhe**.
- After realizing the threats from his neighbours- the Tlokwa, he transferred his capital city to another hill top called ThabaBosiu. Once at **Thaba-Bosiu**, the process of expansion began in all directions.
- Mosheshe used peace, patience and understanding to unite the different tribes into one strong nation.
- He welcomed all the refugees who were running away from the Mfecane wars and gave them land, animals and women in order to have peace with them.
- He established a national parliament or council of elders called Pitso to openly discuss important matters of the Basuto nation. This helped him to know the problems of his subjects, hence being in position to solve them.
- Mosheshe allowed the Christian missionaries to set up mission stations in his nation in order to bring about civilization through teaching his people how to read and write. For example, there was the Paris Evangelical Missionaries (PEM).
- Mosheshe acquired guns and horses from the Europeans in order to protect the Basuto nation and also to increase its military strength.
- He also encouraged the Basuto culture not only on the Basuto but also on the conquered people. For example, he encouraged his subjects to speak one language which promoted unity in the nation.
- Mosheshe used polygamy to unite his people by marrying from different clans and tribes and he also encouraged it amongst the men in his state.
- He used the method of giving gifts and tribute to his powerful neighbours so as to maintain peace with them. For example, he gave cattle and virgin girls (women) to Shaka of the Zulu and Mzilikazi of the Ndebele.
- He restored law and order among people who had been disturbed by the Mfecane through his peaceful policy, hence forming a powerful Basuto state.
- He encouraged many people who were in exile to return to the Basuto state.
- He also used the "cattle ownership system" where he controlled all the cattle in his kingdom and he used to give the same cattle to his subjects to please them for their work. This increased loyalty and respect towards Mosheshe.
- He used diplomacy to deal with the Europeans. For example, he wrote a letter to the Governor of the Cape Colony after defeating the British asking for forgiveness so as to prevent the British attacks.
- He also adopted the age regimental system like that of the Zulu which enabled him to create a strong standing army.

- He used women spies especially his relatives in order to inform him about the secrets of the enemies.
- He used to play one enemy against the other. For example, he accused Matiwane of taking the cattle he had sent as gifts to Shaka and this made Shaka to attack Matiwane.
- He allowed the conquered people to retain their leaders and rule themselves as long as these leaders respected his authority. These were supposed to pay tribute to Mosheshe.
- He tried as much as possible to avoid wars with the neighbours and the whites. For example, he didn't interfere in politics of other tribes in order to keep good relations with them.
- He also used peace treaties with the Europeans to create and maintain peace for the Basuto nation. For example after defeating the Boers in 1836, he signed peace treaties with the British to avoid conflicts with them. For example, in 1843 he signed a peace treaty with the British Governor Napier and in 1860 he was forced to sign the Thaba-Bosiu treaty in which the British wanted to annex Basuto land.
- NOTE: Using the above methods, Mosheshe was able to build a strong Basuto state which became the second after Zulu until the British took it over in 1868. However, his state survived until his death in 1870.
- **PROBLEMS FACED BY MOSHESHE AS THE KING OF THE BASUTO NATION**
- Mosheshe was faced with a number of problems both internally and externally as noted below;
- Mosheshe lacked a strong army at first and this affected the kingdom because he could not easily defeat his enemies and defend his kingdom.
- He was faced with a problem of the increasing number of refugees who entered Basuto land and raided his people for cattle and food hence causing more political instability within the kingdom.
- He faced a problem of the hostile neighbours like the Tlokwa, Zulu, Ndebele and Ndwandwe who always attacked his people.
- He was also faced with the increasing pressure from the Boer trekkers and the British who wanted more land from his kingdom and yet the Basuto population was increasing.
- Mosheshe lost many animals as gifts to powerful rulers like Shaka and Mzilikazi.
- His polygamous nature resulted into the birth of many children who started fighting for power and this caused internal disorder and insecurity within the Basuto state.
- Each chiefdom retained its own leaders and this became difficult for him. Together with their people, they kept on demanding for their independence.
- The Christian missionaries were also a problem to Mosheshe because they kept on demanding for more land for settlement and also preached against the Basuto cultures which created disobedience among his people.
- The continuous wars in South Africa for more than twenty years drained the Basuto resources and Mosheshe's energy.
- Some refugees started disrespecting his orders and fought to break away from his kingdom .

- The mountainous nature of his kingdom made movements and construction difficult.
- His kingdom was attacked by epidemic diseases like smallpox which greatly killed his people.
- Natural disasters like drought and famine also hit the nation, thus weakening it further and therefore some communities like the Korona broke away from the Basuto state.
- Some neighbouring communities refused to adopt the Basuto culture and language which brought disunity among his people.
- The period of European scramble for and partition of Africa threatened the independence and security of the Basuto state.
- **HOW HE SOLVED THE ABOVE PROBLEMS**
- Mosheshe built his nation in strategic places for easy defence against his enemies i.e. on flat topped hills like Thaba-Bosiu.
- To the Boers and the British who attacked his kingdom for land, they were given temporary land and cattle to avoid conflicts with them.
- He left the conquered people under their chiefs in order to avoid conflicts with them. However, he was to be considered as the overall Head of state.
- The problem of refugees was solved by assimilating them and giving them land and cattle and this made them law abiding citizens.
- He used the national assembly (Pitso) to discuss problems that were affecting his people.
- He created a standing army that was used to raid and conquer the neighbouring weaker states, hence strengthening the Basuto kingdom.
- He used diplomacy to reduce attacks from the powerful hostile states. For example, he gave tributes to Shaka and gave cattle to Mzilikazi of the Ndebele.
- He played his enemies against each other. For example, he accused the Ngwane of stealing gifts which were meant for Shaka and so Shaka attacked the Ngwane.
- He married from different clans or tribes to bring about unity in the nation.
- He employed his female relatives as spies in places where they were married in order to get for him information.
- **ACHIEVEMENTS OF MOSHESHE FOR THE BASUTO NATION**
- What contributions did Mosheshe have for the Basuto?
- Explain the importance of King Mosheshe in the history of Basutoland.
- What were the achievements of Mosheshe up to 1870?
- He founded a new nation of the Basuto which is the present day Lesotho and it became the most powerful state.
- He expanded the Basuto nation by changing his capital city from Butha – Buthe for Thaba-Bosiu because it was a good defensive place.
- He created peace with no major rebellion in a nation that was a multi-tribal state for over forty years.
- He created unity among people of different backgrounds and this survived even after his death. This was through establishing one language and culture for all tribes.

- He defended or protected the independence of the Basuto state against the hostile African tribes like Ngwane, Ndebele as well as the Europeans.
- He strengthened the economy of the Basuto nation by giving out loans in form of cattle and land to his people and this greatly led to the economic development of the Basuto state.
- He promoted diplomacy and discussion among the Basuto through the use of assemblies and councils where important matters were discussed.
- He built a strong army after getting guns and horses from the Europeans and he used them for defending his kingdom.
- He restored law and order in a state that had been destroyed by Mfecane period.
- He avoided wars with his neighbours through the use of diplomacy i.e. by giving tributes to his powerful neighbours and playing them against each other.
- He encouraged Christian Missionaries to settle in the Basuto land and this promoted western civilization especially education among his people.
- He created peace with the British when he wrote letter to the British Governor requesting for the British protection against the Boers.
- He encouraged trade with the Europeans (British) which helped to create a strong Basuto economy.
- **THE ORGANISATION OF THE BASUTO STATE**
- Describe the political, social and economic organization of Basuto state by AD1800.
- Explain the organization of Sotho state by AD 1800.
- Describe the way of life of the Basuto by AD 1800.
- The state belonged to the Bantu speakers.
- It was created by an outstanding leader called Mosheshe between 1815 and 1870.
- The state was created as a defensive state during the Mfecane wars.
- Little is known about its early background and therefore its origin is not clear.
- **POLITICAL ORGANISATION**
- The Basuto state was centralized and therefore it was headed by the king whose leadership was hereditary i.e. from father to son.
- The king had a lot of powers but he used the powers sparingly. For example, he acted as the civil, judicial and religious leader of his people.
- The state was made up of semi-independent chiefdoms which Mosheshe brought together after they were scattered by Mfecane period.
- Each chiefdom had its own local leaders. Mosheshe retained the chiefs in the conquered states in their positions as long as they respected him.
- The local chiefs and the conquered people gave gifts like cattle and paid tribute to Mosheshe as a sign of loyalty or respect.
- The smaller conquered groups in the kingdom were controlled by Mosheshe's family members who were placed in different parts of the kingdom.
- Mosheshe established his headquarters in different parts of his nation and put them under his family members. These acted as his spies and therefore they gave him information about such areas.
- He encouraged all refugees to come and settle in the Sotho state.

- There existed two parliaments, that's to say the Inner Council which was made up of the King's relatives and the conquered chiefs.
- This council advised the King on the day to day administration of the kingdom.
- There was also the general or wider assembly called the **Pitso** which was to discuss important matters in the kingdom. All circumcised males were free to attend the Pitso (general assembly) deliberations.
- The Pitso checked the powers of the King and the chiefs and therefore democracy existed.
- Even the assimilated Basuto were free to attend the Pitso meetings.
- The Sotho at first had no permanent or standing army like that of the Zulu. However, in case of need, different age regiments were called upon to defend the state.
- The kingdom chose hilly areas as its capitals like Butha-Buthe and Thaba Bosiu.
- The Sotho state had a peaceful foreign policy. Mosheshe used a number of methods to ensure peace with his neighbours. For example, he sent gifts to the powerful neighbours like the Zulu and Ndebele and even gave land to the Boers.
- **ECONOMIC ORGANISATION**
- The Basuto had a mixed economy i.e. they grew crops and also kept animals like cattle. This cattle was grazed on the hill tops.
- Land was communally owned or belonged to the community but the king was the custodian or controller and he had powers to give it to his subjects.
- Mosheshe received tributes from the chiefs of the conquered people and also sent them to the neighbours.
- The Basuto traded with the British in the Cape Colony and they got guns and other consumer goods like clothes from the Europeans.
- They also practiced hunting where they hunted animals like squirrels, edible rats and antelopes among others.
- The Sotho people were skilled iron workers who produced items like spears, pangas and hoes so as to earn a living.
- They also practiced crafts making and produced items like baskets and mats.
- They practiced fishing especially in Swamps and rivers.
- They also practiced wood curving and made designs of their daily experiences which were later traded with their neighbours.
- When minerals were discovered in South Africa, many Basuto migrated to the mines, industries and towns to become workers there.
- **SOCIAL ORGANIZATION**
- The Sotho state had diverse or different cultures because of the many tribes united or conquered by Mosheshe during its formation. However with time, the social and cultural differences were changed into one kingdom and all of them spoke one Sotho language and believed in the Sotho culture.
- They were organized in clans headed by clan heads leaders.
- The Basuto practiced initiation ceremonies like circumcision of boys before marriage.
- Marriage was an important social function among the Basuto and the king married from all clans to strengthen unity in the kingdom.

- The Basuto always used cattle on important social functions like paying bride price.
- They always liked settling on hill tops for effective security.
- They practiced polygamy where men married more than one wife.
- The Basuto believed in ancestors and spirits and even believed in life after death.
- **MOSHESHE AND THE EUROPEANS (1840-1868)**
- Describe the relationship between Mosheshe and the Europeans.
- How did Mosheshe relate with the Europeans?
- There were two European groups interested in Basuto land i.e. the Boers and the British.
- Mosheshe's relationship with the Europeans was both good and bad.
- The French missionaries were the first whites to settle in Basuto land. He gave them land and they became his personal advisors on European issues and they provided education to his people.
- Later, the missionaries tricked Mosheshe to give land to Moroka the chief of the Rolong who was Mosheshe's enemy.
- The missionaries also took over the piece of land they were given and owned it permanently.
- The second group of Europeans to enter Basuto land was that of the **Boer trekkers** who requested for temporary land for grazing from Mosheshe. However, with time they started constructing permanent buildings on the land and refused to recognize Mosheshe as the king of Basuto.
- The action of the Boers resulted into a conflict known as the Basuto-Boer conflict. Mosheshe was not ready to fight the Boers and therefore requested the British for protection against the Boers.
- The British sent a representative known as Napier to resolve the conflict and the Napier treaty was signed. However, the treaty was in favour of the Boers.
- More tension was created between the Boers, British and Basuto. Mosheshe again requested for the British protection and the British appointed a permanent representative to be based at Bloemfontein in order to resolve the conflict.
- Mosheshe even gave more land to the Boers in order to end the conflict but the Boers refused the land claiming it was too small.
- In 1843, Mosheshe entered an agreement with the British in order to help him chase away the Boers from Basuto land.
- The agreement however, wasn't successful and didn't the conflicts between the Basuto and Boers became the Boers not willing to leave Basuto land.
- In 1848, the British openly decided to come and help him against the Boers.
- After the British success, Sir Harry Smith who was the British Governor, decided to change his mind and got interested in Basuto land.
- In 1850, Sir Harry Smith decided to annex Basuto land which opened up conflicts between the British and Mosheshe.
- The British decided to unite with the Boers against Mosheshe and their joint army was led by **Major General Warden**.
- The Anglo-Boer army was surprisingly defeated by Mosheshe which annoyed the British and therefore they organized another war.

- Before the British could attack Mosheshe once again, they first occupied the Bloemfontein territory which was controlled by Mosheshe .
- The British decided to negotiate with Mosheshe and asked him to pay 10,000 heads of cattle in order to solve the conflict.
- Mosheshe feared and agreed to pay but he managed to pay only 3,500 heads of cattle but the British asked for more animals.
- After Mosheshe's failure, the British decided to attack Mosheshe and by 1868, the British had defeated Mosheshe's army and they declared Basuto land a British protectorate.
- Mosheshe died in 1870 when the Basuto had lost their independence to the British but he died a happy man for defending the Basuto nation from the hostile African neighbours and European attacks.
- **THE SOTHO RESPONSE TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE BRITISH COLONIAL RULE/THE BASUTO REBELLION AGAINST THE BRITISH/THE ANGLO - BASUTO WAR OR THE WAR OF GUNS OF 1880-1881**
- This war was fought between the British (Europeans) and the Sotho (Africans) in South Africa.
- It is also known as the Anglo-Basuto conflict or the British - Basuto war or the war of disarmament or the Basuto resistance of 1880 –1881.
- It was also called the "War of Guns" because the major issue of the war was about guns.
- The British were led by **Sir Gordon Spriggs**, the Cape Prime Minister.
- The Basuto were led by different chiefs like **Moroosi, Lerothodi and Letsie**.
- The war took place in 1880 – 1881 in Basuto land.
- **CAUSES OF THE WAR OF GUNS**
- The causes of the war were long-term and short term as noted below;
- The able leadership provided by the African leaders like **Chief Moroosi, Lerothodi and Letsie** encouraged the Basuto to organize the rebellion.
- The long term enmity or misunderstandings between the Sotho and the British led to the outbreak of the war.
- The Basuto wanted to regain their independence from the British which they had lost in 1868 yet they did not want to be part of the Cape colony, hence leading to the rebellion against the British.
- The death of Mosheshe in 1870, a great diplomat who knew how to handle the whites peacefully left a leadership vacuum among the Sotho which finally resulted into a rebellion.
- The rise of the British imperialism where by the British wanted to colonize the Africans in Basuto land made the Africans to rise up against them.
- The possession of guns by the Basuto for a long time threatened the British, hence causing the war.
- The mistreatment of the Basuto and their chiefs by the British officials annoyed the Africans i.e. the British administrators in Basuto land were harsh and brutal which forced the Africans to rise up in 1880.

- The **1878 Peace Preservation Act** that required all the Sotho to surrender their guns to the British resulted into war since the Basuto were not ready to hand over their guns.
- The loss of land to the whites (British) also annoyed the Basuto so much because it resulted into the displacement of the Basuto to the mountains.
- The Basuto hated the heavy taxes imposed on them by the British especially the hut tax yet they were very poor.
- To make matters worse, the taxes were poorly collected which even involved public flogging.
- The general disrespect of the Basuto chiefs by the British caused the war. For example, they wanted to take away the traditional authority and power of the Basuto chiefs which annoyed them, hence causing war.
- The introduction of forced labour in which the Basuto were forced to work on the British farms under poor conditions made the Basuto to rise up against the British. For example, they were paid little or no payment at all for their labour.
- The increasing number of the British / white settlers into Basuto land annoyed the Sotho which resulted into a war.
- The appointment of a white magistrate (judge) known as **Hamilton Hope** among the Phuthi (Basuto) annoyed the Africans. Mr. Hope was young and this was taken as an insult to the Basuto because he even never respected Basuto culture and traditions.
- The arrest of Chief Moroosi's son by the British for having stolen a horse and his sentence to a four year jail term increased people's anger and determination to fight the British.
- The rescue of Moroosi's son by his father and his efforts to hide him in the mountains where he was captured by the colonial forces also increased conflicts between the British and the Basuto.
- The killing of chief Moroosi by the British in 1879 for resisting the imprisonment of his son and the disarmament of the Basuto, increased anger among the Basuto who had great respect for their chief, hence leading to the war of guns.
- The activities of the Christian missionaries who under mined the Basuto culture also increased anger among the Basuto which led to war.
- The harsh or ruthless suppression of the **Phuthi rebellion** in 1878 in which many Basuto were killed by the British worried the Basuto, hence making them to stage a rebellion in 1880.
- The Proclamation order or disarmament Act of 1880 that required the Basuto to hand in their guns to the British greatly annoyed the Basuto chiefs who therefore opposed it by organizing a rebellion.
- The earlier victories of the Basuto under Mosheshe against the whites (the Boers and British) also encouraged the Basuto to rebel against the British in 1880.
- **THE COURSE OF THE WAR**
- The "War of Guns" took seven months and it was one of the greatest African resistances in South Africa.

- Before the war, the Basuto had fought many wars with the Boers and the British realized that the Basuto were very organized and they could put up a strong resistance against the whites.
- The British therefore asked the Basuto to sign a treaty known as the Peace Preservation treaty in 1878. This treaty would enable the British to disarm the Basuto.
- When the Basuto learnt about the disarmament plan, they resisted under chief Moroosi, hence leading to the "War of Guns".
- The British reacted by hunting down Moroosi and finally killed him. The Basuto refused to surrender and they continued with the war.
- In 1880, the Cape Colony government issued another order known as the "Disarmament Proclamation" to disarm the Basuto. The Basuto chiefs protested against this but in vain.
- The Basuto under the leadership of Lerothodi planned for another rebellion. The bad weather and massive support of the people made them to register initial victory against the British.
- The British were demoralized after the defeat of the Cape Colony troops. The disarmament plan was abandoned by the British and the Basuto were encouraged to register their guns.
- In 1881, the British came to peace terms with the Basuto because the war was becoming costly on the side of the British.
- The Cape Colony authority therefore requested the British colonial government to take over direct administration of Basuto land in 1884.
- **EFFECTS OF THE WAR**
- The war affected both the Africans and the British as noted below;
- At first the British were defeated by the Basuto in the "War of Guns" and therefore the British were so humiliated and embarrassed all over the whole world for being defeated by an African Society.
- The Basuto were able to protect or preserve their independence from the Cape government until 1884 when the British declared a protectorate over Basuto land.
- The British learnt a lesson and therefore they were forced to sign an agreement with the Basuto to end the war.
- After the war, the Basuto were allowed to keep their guns so as to keep peace but they had to register them and this was accepted by the Basuto.
- The Basuto leaders were to be forgiven.
- After the war, the Basuto regained part of the land which the British had confiscated or taken over.
- It paved way for the declaration of a British Protectorate over Basuto land in 1884. This led to the loss of independence by the Basuto.
- There was increased settlement of the white settlers in Basuto land.
- The Basuto survived being swallowed up by the Boers as Basuto land was declared a British protectorate in 1884.
- There was loss of lives including the Basuto leaders like Moroosi and white leaders like Hamilton Hope.

- There was depopulation for both the African and the whites due to the heavy death rates. For example, more than 3000 Africans were killed during the war.
- There was displacement of the Africans from their land.
- The displaced Africans were pushed into reserves and other areas where there was misery and suffering for example Qiting District.
- There was massive destruction of property like houses and plantations (farms).
- There was loss of cattle thus leading to poverty among the Basuto.
- There was a general decline in trade. The war lasted for seven months which disrupted trade in the region, thus weakening the Basuto economically.
- There was decline in agriculture in the Basuto land. As a result, famine broke out in Basuto land after the war.
- The war created divisions among the Basuto because some of the Basuto collaborated with the Europeans and this created hatred and disunity between the fighters and those who supported or collaborated with the British.
- The war increased the Basuto or African nationalism because of the Basuto victory. This later laid a foundation for the struggle for independence of Lesotho
- The war was expensive for the Africans and the British.
- The Basuto resorted to the skillful guerilla resistance using the Griqua and Boer Commandos.
- The Basuto lost their culture, religion and traditional values.
- There was increased enslavement of the Basuto by the whites.
- There was increased spread of western culture like Christianity, education etc. among the Basuto.
- There was increased enmity between the Basuto and the British due to the war.
- The war encouraged future African rebellions like the Bambatha rebellion of 1906 and the Nama-Herero rebellion of 1904-1907 because the Africans thought that they also could defeat the British.
- The war increased insecurity, fear and tension in Basuto land.
- **REASONS WHY THE BASUTO WERE VICTORIOUS OVER THE BRITISH:**
- The Basuto defeated the British in **1881** due to the following reasons;
- The Basuto were determined to regain their lost independence from the British at all costs.
- The Basuto were well organized during the war.
- The Basuto refused to surrender their guns which helped them to defeat the British.
- The able leadership provided by Chief Lerothodi enabled the Basuto to defeat the British in 1881.
- The Basuto were many in number as compared to the British which also enabled them to win the war.
- The Basuto fighters were well trained to fight their enemies – the British.
- The Basuto were experienced in fighting battles which also enabled them to defeat the British.
- The Basuto had an efficient and effective spy network which enabled them to gather intelligence information about the enemies the British.

- The British also underestimated the military strength of the Basuto which was a big mistake on the part of the British.
- The mountainous nature of Basutoland was unfavourable for the British soldiers yet the Basuto could hide there and continue with their rebel activities against the British.
- The weather of Basutoland was very hostile to the British soldiers which led to their defeat by the Basuto.
- The war was very costly for the British to fight which eventually led to their defeat by the Basuto in 1881.
- The British were also fighting many wars at the same time like the First Anglo – Boer War of 1880 – 1881 and this therefore could not enable them defeat the Basuto.
- The British had been defeated by the Zulu in **January 1879** at Isandhlwana which weakened them militarily, hence leading to their defeat by the Basuto in 1881.
- The British also lacked support from their home government which led to their defeat.
- **THE SWAZI NATION**
- Describe the origin of Swazi nation in the 19th century.
- Swazi nation was one of the states established during the Mfecane period as a defensive state.
- The Swazi nation is presently called Swaziland and the nation was founded by King Sobhuza I.
- The people who formed the Swazi nation were originally known as the **Ngwane**. The Ngwane belonged to the **Nkosi Dlamini clan** of the **Nguni speaking people**.
- Sobhuza I started the nation with only ten (10) subordinate clans.
- During the Mfecane wars, the Ngwane under Sobhuza I were defeated by the Ndwandwe under **Chief Zwide**.
- After **Chief Zwide** had defeated Sobhuza I, he led his people northwards across river Pongolo into modern or present day Swaziland.
- In their new home, Sobhuza I first absorbed the **Nguni** and **Sotho** clans he found there. Later, eight (8) more clans that were running away from Shaka's brutal rule joined Sobhuza I to create the Swazi nation.
- Sobhuza I later welcomed all the refugees who were running away from the Mfecane wars and gave them land and food.
- He united all the people and organized them into a new and large state.
- He was lenient to the conquered people and he allowed them to retain their chiefs.
- He organized people into age regiments to create unity and ensure law and order.
- The new strength enabled him to conquer all the weak tribes, hence expanding the nation. The conquered youths were incorporated into the age regiments.
- He treated the conquered tribes kindly and treated all warriors or fighters even non-Ngwane as one family.
- Sobhuza I forced the Nguni culture and language on the conquered people to create unity.

- The new state was protected from enemies by the mountains of Swaziland. The **Lebombo Mountains** gave Sobhuza I safety from his enemies.
- Sobhuza I avoided unnecessary wars with the powerful neighbours and he emphasized diplomacy. For example, he established good terms with Shaka and gave him fat cows. He also gave beautiful virgin girls to Shaka to avoid conflicts.
- Sobhuza I even married one of Zwide's daughters so as to create friendship with the Ndwandwe. This helped him to avoid or prevent wars with the Ndwandwe.
- By 1814 Swazi nation had grown into a very strong large state
- Sobhuza I unfortunately died in **1840** after creating the nation and he was succeeded by his son **Mswati I**.
- **METHODS USED BY SOBHUZA I TO CREATE THE SWAZI NATION**
- QN: Explain the contribution of King Sobhuza I to the rise of the Swazi nation.
- QN: What methods were used by Sobhuza I to build the Swazi nation?
- Sobhuza I employed several methods to build a strong Swazi nation which included the following;
- He welcomed all the refugees who were running away from the Mfecane wars caused by Shaka and gave them land and food.
- He employed diplomacy (a peaceful foreign policy) with his neighbours and the Europeans. This helped him to avoid unnecessary wars with them.
- For example, he gave beautiful virgin girls and cows to Shaka as gifts and also married Zwide's daughter.
- He also married Zwide's daughter in order to strength his friendship with Zwide and prevent wars with the Ndwandwe.
- Sobhuza I gave the Boers free movement in the Swazi nation to prevent the Boers from conquering his people.
- He allowed his people to retain their chiefs as long as they remained loyal to him.
- He organized his men into age regiments and this increased the strength of his state which enabled him to conquer all the tribes that had been disorganized by the Mfecane period.
- He recruited the conquered youths into his army as well as treating the conquered tribes kindly which strengthened his kingdom.
- He forced the conquered tribes to adopt the Swazi culture and language which promoted unity in the nation.
- He united people of different backgrounds, hence creating a strong kingdom.
- He centralized the administration of the kingdom in his hands.
- **KING MSWATI I (1840 – 1868)**
- Describe the achievements of King Mswati for his nation.
- Mswati was a son of Sobhuza I and Zwide's daughter.
- He succeeded his father in **1840** and ruled until **1868**.
- He grew up during the Mfecane period and therefore he got interested in military affairs.
- It was Mswati who gave the kingdom its name **Swazi** and it was from him that the present day country of Swaziland derives its name.

- He is described as the most important and greatest of all of the Swazi kings. This is because during his time, he introduced a number of political and administrative reforms that he borrowed from the Zulu state.
- He transformed the Swazi kingdom into a powerful and prosperous nation because he was more aggressive than his father.
- He transformed, improved and strengthened the political and military organization of the Swazi nation.
- During his rule, he established contacts with the Boers and the British.
- He organized his people in the Zulu military ways.
- He also strengthened the age regiments though not organized as a standard army. These age regiments helped to maintain peace and stability in the kingdom.
- He built military settlements in the different parts of the nation where warriors lived for easy mobilization.
- He recruited the conquered youths into the Swazi army.
- He encouraged unity in the nation through the age regiments and created a nation of people of common interest.
- He pleased commoners by appointing them as commanders of the regiments.
- He assimilated or absorbed the conquered people who became part of the large state of Swazi.
- Mswati established and maintained a highly centralized administration in the kingdom. All the chiefs were under the direct control of Mswati who appointed and tried them.
- Mswati maintained the council of elders and the larger assembly for easy administration.
- He organized regular meetings of the chiefs to discuss important issues of the state.
- He also organized meeting of all leading men and males where they were free to speak out their problems.
- Mswati attended all these regular meetings and he could be criticized in case he failed to attend a meeting.
- During Mswati's rule, much importance was attached to the queen mother who was highly respected and her home was the capital of the nation.
- Mswati was polygamous and he encouraged polygamy among his followers as a way of accommodating the female captives.
- The polygamous nature emphasized by Mswati created unity among the different groups and absorbed captives.
- He created a peaceful relationship between the Europeans especially the Boers and the Swazi nation. For example, he welcomed the Boers and gave them some land for settlement and grazing.
- He died in 1868 and left behind a very powerful Swazi nation.
- **THE ORGANISATION OF THE SWAZI NATION**
- **POLITICAL ORGANISATION**
- The Swazi nation was founded by Sobhuza I who provided a strong leadership to the state.

- The state was headed by a king who was hereditary and Sobhuza I was succeeded by his son Mswati in 1840 who brought about many reforms.
- The kingdom was made up of a number of semi-independent chiefdoms.
- Each chiefdom had its own local leader who was responsible for collecting taxes and for providing security. However, all the chiefs remained loyal to the king and they were answerable to the king.
- There were two councils that helped the king in his administration i.e. the Council of Elders and the General Council or Assembly. The council of elders was composed of the chiefs and it discussed national affairs.
- The larger or general council (assembly) was made up of all adult men and it checked on the powers of the king and chiefs. This assembly resembled that of the Sotho people known as the **Pitso council**.
- There were age regiments which defended the state but these were permanent though they were later made permanent.
- There was also an institution of the **Queen mother** who was very much respected in the Swazi nation.
- The Queen mother had a lot of influence on the king and she was taken to be superior to the king although she did not have real powers.
- The Queen mother acted as a regent when the king was young or absent and she ruled on behalf of the king.
- The king had a palace in every important town to make his administration easy.
- The Swazi nation had a peaceful foreign policy and the kings used a number of methods to achieve this. For example, Sobhuza I married Chief Zwide's daughter to promote friendship with the Ndwandwe. He also gave cattle to Shaka as gifts.
- **ECONOMIC ORGANISATION**
- The Swazi nation carried out cultivation and grew crops like yams, cassava and beans.
- Some cattle keeping was carried out although Dingane's raids discouraged many Swazi people from keeping cattle.
- The Swazi traded with the neighbours and the Europeans like the Boers.
- Iron working was also an important economic activity carried out by the Swazi.
- The king controlled all the wealth and economic activities in the kingdom.
- **SOCIAL ORGANISATION**
- The Swazi were united by clans and age regiments and therefore people of the same clan or age group were grouped together.
- The family was the smallest unit of social organization among the Swazi.
- The king appointed the commoners as commanders of the regiments in order to please them.
- The Swazi were religious people who believed in small gods and life after death just like other Bantu groups.
- The conquered people were assimilated or absorbed and they became part of the Swazi nation after adopting the Swazi culture.
- The Swazi were divided into three social classes i.e. the true Swazi, those assimilated or absorbed and those found in the area where they settled.

- **FACTORS FOR THE GROWTH OF THE SWAZI NATION:**

- QN: What factors led to the growth of the Swazi nation during the 19th century?
- A number of factors contributed to the growth of the Swazi nation which included the following;
- The role of able leaders like Sobhuza I and Mswati I who offered good leadership led to the rise of the nation.
- Sobhuza I organized his men into temporary regiments which ensured law and order in the nation.
- The conquered tribes had to adopt the Swazi culture and language which ensured unity.
- The nation was located in the mountains of Swaziland (Lebombo Mountains) for easy protection.
- Sobhuza's marriage to Zwide's daughter helped to strengthen the relationship of the two nations.
- The occurrence of the Mfecane period weakened the original inhabitants of the area i.e. the Ndwandwe and this gave the Swazi nation to grow.
- The centralization of power by King Sobhuza I and later his son Mswati I promoted peace in the kingdom, hence enabling it to grow.
- The kingdom had a hereditary system of succession which kept out civil wars or succession disputes in the nation.
- The presence of the council of elders that provided good advice to the kingdom also enabled the nation to grow.
- The role provided by the Queen mother in providing wise counsel to the king helped the Swazi nation to grow.
- The good relationship or friendship with the Boers ensured peace, hence leading to the growth of the nation.
- The Swazi traded with the Europeans and acquired guns which were used to defend and expand the nation.
- The good climate and fertile soils favoured food growing and cattle keeping in the nation which helped it to grow.
- The existence of iron ore deposits led to the production of farming and fighting tools which led to the growth of the nation.

- **THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN MSWATI I AND THE EUROPEANS**

- Describe the relationship between king Mswati I of the Swazi nation and the Europeans between 1840 and 1868.
- Mswati I was a son of Sobhuza I and Zwide's daughter. He succeeded his father in 1840 after the death of Sobhuza I. His rule lasted until 1868 when he died.
- Mswati I was described as the greatest of all of the Swazi kings because he transformed the Swazi into a powerful kingdom.
- During his time, he established friendly relations with the Europeans especially the Boers and the British. The Boers were very much interested in the Swazi fertile land and therefore, Mswati gave them a very big piece of land for their settlement and grazing.

- He further appointed a white chief for them. Unfortunately, the Boers refused to acknowledge Mswati's rule over them and they also refused to be assimilated into the Swazi culture.
- Mswati went ahead to convince his people to allow the Boers to graze their animals in the Swazi land despite the fact that they did not recognize him as their king.
- In 1864, the Boers supported him to defeat the **Poko** who were disturbing the Swazi and the Boers.
- Without being suspicious, he allowed the Boers into the Swazi land. As time went by, the Boer population went on increasing in the Swazi nation and this worried Mswati and the Swazi people.
- The Boers even became more stubborn and demanded for the annexation of the Swazi nation to Transvaal republic because it would give them a sea route to the **Kosi Bay**. The British however, refused to support the annexation of the Swazi by the Boers.
- Mswati had therefore managed to promote a peaceful relationship with the Boers until the time of his death in **1868**.
- When Mswati died in 1868, there was a succession dispute in which the Boers supported **Mbandezeni** to become the new Swazi king.
- Under Mbandezeni, the Transvaal Boers gained a lot of influence in Swazi nation. For example, he gave them a lot of land which included mining areas, trading centres and the right to carry out trade.
- In **1889**, Mbandezeni died and the Queen mother became the regent. Due to the increased Boer population and attacks, the Queen mother sent a delegation to London asking for the British protection.
- However, Britain was not ready to take over the Swazi land as a protectorate.
- Later in **December 1894**, the Boer government of Transvaal was requested to take control over the Swazi state on behalf of the British but it was not to become part of the Transvaal.
- The Queen mother was not happy with this decision and therefore she kept on requesting for British protection against the Boers.
- After the Second Anglo-Boer War of 1899 – 1902, the British took over Swazi land after defeating the Boers and therefore Swaziland became a colony of the British.
- **THE BRITISH ANNEXATION OF SWAZILAND**
- How did Swaziland become a British protectorate?
- Why did the British annex Swaziland in 1902?
- Swaziland was a free country until 1868 when King Mswati died.
- After his death, the Transvaal Boers started involving themselves in the politics of Swaziland. As a result, in 1894 Swaziland was taken over by the Transvaal republic as agreed upon by the British.
- This was after a Swazi delegation was sent to London by the Queen mother asking for the British protection of Swaziland.
- Unfortunately, the British at that time were not ready to take over Swaziland and therefore the Boers took over the protection of Swaziland.
- As the Boer settlement increased in Swaziland, the British became worried.

- The Boers had aimed at taking over Swaziland as part of their territory.
- They even started taking over land and exploiting the economic resources of Swaziland like minerals.
- The outbreak of the Second Anglo-Boer War of 1899-1902 in which the Boers were defeated marked the end of the Boer administration in Swaziland.
- Therefore in 1902, Swaziland became fully a British colony until 1968 when she became independent.
- **REASONS WHY THE BRITISH ANNEXED SWAZILAND**
- The British were concerned about the enmity between the Swazi and the Boers which affected the security at the Cape, hence leading to its annexation.
- The British feared the **German-Transvaal** railway line that was being constructed towards the coast through Swaziland. They therefore feared that the Germans and Boers would annex Swaziland before the British did.
- The British were not happy with the Boer interference in the Swazi politics especially after the death of **Mbandezeni** who was a collaborator to the Boers.
- The failure of the **Theophilus Shepstone** committee that had been sent by the British to settle conflicts between the Boers and the Swazi led to the British occupation of Swaziland.
- The British wanted to protect African land which the Boers had started grabbing.
- The weakness of the Provisional Government set up in Swaziland after the death of Mbandezeni in 1889 caused the British annexation of Swaziland.
- The continued pressure from the Swazi traditional leaders and the Queen mother for the British protection finally forced the British to take over Swaziland in 1902.
- The increased Boer numbers in Swaziland forced the British to annex Swaziland because they feared that the Boers would take over Swaziland.
- The long term negotiations between the British and the Boers over Swaziland finally led to the British occupation of Swaziland in 1902.
- The outbreak of the Second Anglo-Boer War of 1899-1902 gave the British a chance to take over Swaziland since it was near the republic of Transvaal which had also become a British colony.
- **THE PEDI STATE UNDER SEKUKUNI**
- The Pedi State was established in the mountainous areas East of Transvaal.
- The most popular leader was **Chief Sekukuni**.
- He became chief in **1861** after the death of his father **Sekwati**.
- The State was established during the Mfecane period and therefore had very many refugees who were running away from the Mfecane chaos and the Boer Trekkers.
- Sekukuni used the trick of settling the displaced people on the margins of his territory so as to resist further attempts of displacing the Pedi people.
- Sekukuni established a strong state that was able to prevent attacks from neighbouring states like Ndebele, Gaza and Ndwandwe. However, he was not able to resist the whites i.e. the Boers and British during his regime.
- **WHY THE PEDI CONFLICTED WITH THE WHITES (1861 – 1879)**
- *What were the causes of the Pedi war of resistance of 1861 – 1879?*

- The increased number of Boers in the interior and the need to expand the Transvaal State Eastwards so as to get access to the Indian Ocean made the Boers to clash with the Pedi.
- The need for more land by the Europeans made them to invade the Pedi with a hope of getting land for settlement and grazing and this resulted into the Pedi war.
- The collaboration of Sekukuni's rival brother Mwampuru who had fled to Swaziland i.e. he befriended the Boers and made them to attack the Pedi, hence causing conflicts.
- Sekukuni also hated the Christian missionaries that his father had allowed in the kingdom mainly the Boers. He suspected them for spying for the Boers.
- The missionaries were also hated because they were agents of the division within the kingdom through their attacks on the Pedi culture.
- The rumours that the Pedi had burnt a German mission made the Boers to attack the Pedi.
- The Pedi felt angry when the Boers and Swazi attacked and destroyed their settlements in Spekboom in July 1876 and therefore the Pedi had to revenge.
- The war was also caused by the British annexation of Transvaal in 1877. This made the British to intervene in the conflict which led to war.
- The Pedi wanted to protect their land because they knew the whites were interested in it.
- The lack of respect for the local leaders by the whites also forced the Pedi to fight.
- The long term enmity between the Africans and the Whites since the time of the Great Trek also forced them to fight.
- The killing of the Pedi leaders like Sekukuni's son **Maraomotshe** by the Anglo-Boer forces annoyed the Pedi, hence leaving them with no alternative but to fight in 1879.
- **EFFECTS OF THE WAR**
- The Bapedi were defeated by the British in **1879**.
- There was loss of lives among the Bapedi and British.
- Sekukuni was imprisoned by the British and later killed.
- Famine broke out because of the long period of fighting.
- The war was costly to the Boers and the British. For example, they spent a lot of money during their war with the Bapedi.
- The Bapedi lost their independence to the British
- Many Bapedi were displaced by the British.
- Many Europeans started settling in Bapedi land after the defeat of the Pedi.
- The long period of war disorganised economic activities like trade and agriculture.
- The resistance paved a way for the outbreak of the Angl-Zulu wars of 1879 and the Basuto War of Guns of 1880-1881 because the Africans thought that the British had been weakened by the Bapedi.
- The war led to depopulation of the Bapedi.
- The conflict between the Bapedi and the British increased the British interference into the Transvaal politics.

- A lot of property was destroyed during the conflicts between the Pedi and the whites.
- It increased the British influence or imperialism or control in South Africa especially after the victory of the British over the Pedi.
- There was suffering and misery among the Pedi people.
- The Pedi lost their land to the Boers and Swazi.
- **THE MINERAL REVOLUTION OR DISCOVERY IN SOUTH AFRICA (1867-1884):**
- The term mineral revolution is used to refer to the discovery and exploitation of minerals from 1867-1884 or it refers to the economic changes that came with the discovery of minerals.
- It is also known as the mining revolution in South Africa.
- **Before** the mineral discovery, South Africa was **weak, socially, economically and politically**.
- The economy was generally **less developed** and depended on wool exports.
- The economy was **agro-based i.e. it** mainly depended on agriculture which was mainly **subsistence**.
- The British at the Cape depended on **wine** and **pastoral** farming. Orange Free State depended on **Cereal and Sheep** rearing while Transvaal depended on sheep and cattle rearing.
- The **transport and communication system** as well as the levels of **urbanization** were **very poor**.
- There was **general poverty** among the Boers and the Africans and the British were also not so rich.
- Political power between the whites and Africans did not differ so much.
- The **social life still depended on the race** and society perceptions.
- The first major discovery was of Diamonds in **1867** at Kimberly between rivers Vaal and Orange which started a number of changes in South Africa.
- There was also the discovery of **gold at Witwatersrand** in Transvaal around 1884.
- Other minerals like **uranium manganese, copper, cobalt, coal, tin and iron were also discovered by 1886 which** brought more changes in South Africa.
- **EFFECTS OF THE MINERAL DISCOVERY ON THE PEOPLES OF SOUTH AFRICA**
- The following were the economic, social and political changes or effects brought about by the discovery of minerals in South Africa. These effects were both positive and negative.
- **Economic changes**
- **International trade developed** and the level of exports increased.
- The increased exports generated foreign exchange for South Africa. For example, diamond exports fetched more than 4 million pounds annually by 1892.
- **Local markets were enlarged** as the farmers around the mines became wealthy because of the increased demand or prices for their produce.
- **Agriculture was transformed** from subsistence to **commercial farming**.
- **Cash crop growing developed** around the **mining centres**.

- Pastoral farming was developed into **commercialized Pastoralism**.
- **Wine production** prospered due to the discovery of minerals.
- Most **Africans** participated as **providers of labour and they became migrant labourers or workers**.
- There was **development of transport** networks. For example, **roads and bridges** were built in the mines and country side.
- **Railway lines** like **Delagoa-Transvaal railway (1887)**, the **Natal-Transvaal railway (1891)**, **Delagoa-Protoria railway (1892)**, **Cape-Rand (1892)** also were developed.
- **Ox-wagons** that had been used before mineral discovery **were replaced by railways**.
- The communication system was transformed by bringing in better ones. For example, **Telephone and Telegraph lines were built**.
- **Water transport** was also improved and **modern steamers** and ships were introduced **on rivers like Vaal and Orange**.
- There was development of the **Banking sector** as several banks were established like **Standard Bank, Orient Bank and the National Bank of Orange Free State**.
- Many **Insurance companies** also came up to handle the mineral risks.
- **Urbanization** also became rapid and many towns grew in South Africa for example **Pretoria, Durban, Kimberly and Johannesburg**.
- There was **population growth** as a result of the coming of the **Uitlanders**. For example, **Kimberly had 50,000 inhabitants** by 1871.
- There was establishment of **agricultural processing industries**. For example, in Johannesburg.
- Many **manufacturing industries** were also established especially around the mining centres.
- Many Africans became workers in the mines and industries. Therefore, there were increased employment opportunities **for Africans**.
- The general **living standards** of the people were **improved** as a result of industrialization and agriculture.
- The whole **economy changed** from an agricultural (*agrarian*) to an **industrial one**.
- Africans started looking for **cash jobs, thus** leading to **the development of a cash economy**.
- Thousands of Africans thronged or moved to the mines and urban centres to seek for cash employment. Therefore, there **was rural-urban migration**.
- The **price of land** around the towns and **mines increased**. It therefore became expensive to acquire land.
- Some **Africans sold much of their land**.
- **The Boer states** rapidly emerged from poverty to become wealthy or **they became rich**.
- **Transvaal prospered by heavily taxing the rich Gold mining companies** like the De-Beers Company.

- Natal also **made a lot of money from custom duties** and sugar industries.
- The **Cape became rich** because of the custom duties collected.
- **Specialization developed** with **Natal for agriculture** yet Orange Free State and Transvaal were for **mining and industry**.
- The African rural economy declined as many **Africans became poor**.
- It led to the emergency of **very wealthy individuals like Cecil Rhodes and Barney Barnato**.
- Wealthy **mining companies** like the Gold Fields Company and the **De-Beers Consolidated** Mining Company of John Cecil Rhodes came up in South Africa.
- There was development of a monetary **cash economy** as opposed to barter trade.
- **Foreign exchange and local investment increased** as many foreigners poured money into the economy.
- It brought about a high level of **technology** and **capital investment** in the region.
- **The Boers got jobs or employment** in the mines and industries.
- **Social changes**
- People's social attitudes and behaviors changed. For example, they **copied bad European habits**, dropped their traditional beliefs and their ways of life, postponed marriage, children and wives were no longer a symbol of wealth but money. Therefore, there was **loss of culture**.
- **Families broke up** as men over stayed away from their families working in the mines.
- **The Africans lost property like land especially** where minerals were discovered, thus **leading to displacement to reserves and slums** like Soweto.
- The Africans were denied skilled work and **left to offer only unskilled labour or were given only dirty jobs**, overworked, **paid low wages**. The Africans therefore provided the muscles while the whites provided the brains.
- **Africans were enslaved** and forced to provide labour on white farms.
- **Agriculture declined** among the African societies as they **rushed for better jobs** in the mines and towns, thus leading to **famine**.
- **The Africans became poor** after losing control of their economy to the whites.
- **The Africans lost their lives** in the mine **accidents** which caused **depopulation** in the African societies.
- **Racial segregation** increased and the Africans became inferior and second class citizens, thus leading to Apartheid.
- **Political changes**
- The discovery of minerals tilted or changed the **balance of power in South Africa in favour of the whites**.
- The **British** began to **interfere** in the affairs of several African societies. For example, **they encircled them leading to wars like the Anglo-African wars**.
- **Enmity between the Africans and the whites** increased as the whites became richer.
- **African rulers became powerless** as their military power was completely destroyed.

- There was **increased African nationalism** as the Africans came together to fight for their freedom and mineral share.
- There was **formation of political parties** like the South African Native Congress formed in 1912 which later became the African National Congress (ANC).
- **The African rights were restricted** as they lost their **voting rights** and the right to own guns.
- **The White supremacy over the Africans** was confirmed as the **Africans lost independence**.
- The Africans were **no longer protected by the British** as it was before.
- There was the rise of **Boer and British hardliners like Cecil Rhodes and Paul Kruger**.
- **The British influence over the Africans increased as Swaziland, Lesotho and Botswana were annexed**.
- It increased the enmity between the Boers and British in South Africa. This produced three major wars i.e the 1st Anglo-Boer war of 1880 – 1881, The Jameson raid of 1895 and the 2nd Anglo-Boer war of 1899-1902.
- There was increased **British desire to federate or unite South Africa**.
- In **conclusion**, the discovery of minerals generally changed the statusquo of the peoples of South Africa, whites being the most beneficiaries. The effects or changes were political, economic, and social on the Africans, British and Boers.
- **EFFECTS OF MINERAL DISCOVERY ON THE AFRICANS**
QN: How did the discovery of minerals in South Africa affect the Africans?
 - It was a period of mineral revolution in South Africa.
 - Before this period, South Africa's economy was generally weak with low standards of living.
 - It was an agro-based and less developed economy.
 - Orange Free State depended on crop and sheep rearing
 - While the Cape depended on wine and wool production.
 - On the other hand, Transvaal depended on sheep and cattle.
 - The economy was mainly controlled by Europeans/British.
 - In 1867, diamond was discovered at Kimberly.
 - In 1886, gold was discovered at Witwatersrand in Transvaal.
 - Later, other discoveries of Manganese, Coal, Uranium and Copper were witnessed.
 - This brought both positive and negative effects to the Africans.
 - Africans were employed in the mines and industries.
 - Africans standards of living improved.
 - Africans started working for money/ a cash economy was introduced which forced everybody to work in order to get money.
 - Some Africans got money and were able to send their children to schools. This led to the emergence of a new class of African elites. These included Albert Lithuli, Nelson Mandela, Walter Sisulu etc.
 - There was increased African nationalism as the Africans in the mines came together to fight for their freedom. This led to the formation of political parties to fight for

African rights in the mines like the **South African Native Congress** formed in 1912 later became the **African National Congress** (ANC).

- Africans got markets for their Agricultural produce especially near the mines.
- Africans acquired guns although they were of poor quality.
- Negatively, there was rural-urban migration as the Africans went to towns to look for jobs.
- Africans became migrant labourers.
- Africans families broke up as the men overstayed away from their families working in the mines.
- Africans lost land especially where minerals were discovered.
- There was displacement of the Africans.
- Those who were displaced were forced to live in reserves and in dirty slums that surrounded the mines e.g. Soweto. Therefore, there was the emergence of slums.
- The slums were also characterized by lack of facilities, congestion and poor living conditions.
- Africans suffered from various European diseases causing a lot of suffering and misery to them.
- Africans acquired guns although they were of poor quality.
- The crime rate in the Shanty towns like Soweto was so high. This was due to the high cost of living in the towns.
- Africans were discriminated by the whites in employment.
- They were denied skilled work. That is, they were given dirty jobs, overworked, paid low wages.
- Africans were mistreated.
- Africans were discriminated by the whites. This laid ground for the establishment of the Apartheid system.
- Africans were forced to work on contract or given casual jobs.
- Agriculture declined among many African societies since farming was neglected for better jobs in the mines.
- There was outbreak of famine among the African communities.
- Africans became poor after losing control of the economy.
- Africans lost their lives in the mining accidents.
- Some African areas were depopulated.
- There was loss of cultures and traditional practices as many Africans adopted Western or European cultures especially those who went to towns.
- Some even adopted bad European habits like prostitution, smoking, drinking, gambling etc.
- Africans in urban centres postponed marriage and others tended to be monogamous due to the high cost of living.
- Tribal differences also disappeared for those who moved to towns.
- Money became the new symbol of wealth and status but not cows, children and wives as it was before.
- African rulers became powerless because they had lost a lot of their powers.
- The Africans stopped respecting their local leaders since they had no authority.

- The Africans societies were defeated by the Europeans and they lost their independence for example the Zulu Kingdom.
- The military power of the Africans was completely destroyed by the whites.
- There were increased conflicts between the Africans and the whites that resulted into wars.
- Africans were no longer protected by the British as it was before.
- The British influence over the African increased as Swaziland, Lesotho and Botswana were annexed by the British.
- Enmity between the Africans and the Whites worsened as the Whites became richer.
- **EFFECTS OF MINERAL DISCOVERY ON THE BOERS**
- There was increased Boer Nationalism and unity i.e. the Boers were determined to protect their independence.
- They became more proud and arrogant.
- The Boers were forced to unite against the British in order to protect their mineral wealth.
- It led to the rise of powerful Boer leaders like Paul Kruger the President of Transvaal Republic.
- They became richer and wealthy than before the mineral discovery.
- The Boers then enjoyed improved standards of living.
- Their capital investment also improved and they were put into a revolution.
- The Boers started getting international recognition from countries like Germany.
- They became politically strong because of their improved military power since they bought better guns.
- Because of this military power, they began attacking and capturing neighbouring African societies.
- They even defeated the British in the 1880-1881 First Anglo-Boer War and the 1895 Jameson Raid.
- Commercial agriculture was developed, hence improving on the economic status of the Boers further.
- There was the development of transport networks in the Boer republics like roads, bridges, railway lines etc. For example, the 1887 Delgoa – Transvaal and the 1891 Natal – Transvaal Railways.
- The Boer communication network also improved as many telephone lines and telegrams were built.
- New ports were built and many Steamer ships were established on many rivers.
- Social infrastructures were established e.g. schools and hospitals were set up.
- Banks were also set up like the Orient and Standard Banks.
- It led to the growth of towns like Pretoria, Johannesburg, Vereeniging, Durban etc.
- There was the development of international trade between the Whites in South Africa and the outside world.
- Foreign exchange earnings for the Boers increased due to the sale of minerals.
- Bad practices like theft, gambling etc. increased in the Boer republics especially among the poor whites.

- There was labour shortage on Boer farms as Africans ran to work in the mines.
- The Boers got good jobs in the mines and industries.
- The Boers were put into an industrial revolution as many industries emerged.
- There was a drop in crop production.
- Many whites especially of British origin (Uitlanders) were attracted into the Boer republics.
- Land became expensive around the mines.
- It increased Anglo-Boer enmity as they competed for minerals.
- It delayed the Union or Federation of the Boers with the British. This was due to the conflicts between the Boers and the British over the control of the mining centres.
- The Anglo-Boer wars led to the destruction of property.
- It led to the rise of a new class of poor whites.
- The Boers lost land where the minerals were discovered for example near Griqualand to the British.
- Some Boers lost their lives in mine accidents and wars.
- Led to Anglo-Boer wars like the First Anglo-Boer war of 1880-1881, the Jameson raid of 1895 and the Second Anglo-Boer war of 1899-1902.
- Led to population pressure around the mining centres.
- The Boers lost independence but on a temporary basis to the British.
- It led to the annexation of the Boer republics like Transvaal in 1877.
- Boer conflicts with Africans increased.
- The Boers prospered by taxing mining companies like the De Beers Company.
- The Boers felt cheated by the British.
- **Assignment: *How did the discovery of minerals in South Africa affect the British?(Write a minimum of 20 points)***
- **HOW THE DISCOVERY OF MINERALS AFFECTED THE RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN THE BOERS AND THE BRITISH:**
- Before the discovery of minerals, **there was already a bad relationship** between the British and the Boers which only got worse with the discovery of minerals. Therefore, when minerals were discovered, the **relationship between the two white communities became more antagonistic or hostile.**
- Conflicts immediately developed over the ownership of the mineral fields resulting into the **Kaate Award that gave the diamond fields to the Griqua Chief known as Andries Waterboer.**
- The **Boers of Orange Free State felt that they had been cheated.**
- **Their brothers in the Cape colony** also became **jealous.**
- Orange Free State **even wanted** to wage war **over Griqualand west** but they were **calmed down** by their president **Johannes Hendrick Brand.**
- The **British interest in the Boer controlled areas increased hoping that they were also having minerals.**
- It increased the Boer nationalism which was provoked by the British imperialism thus, increasing tension between the two white communities.
- Because of mineral discovery, the British began to press **for a federation with the Boer states.**

- **However, none of the Boer States wanted to join the federation hence increased tension between the two.**
- **As a result, in 1877 the British annexed Transvaal** republic.
- The annexation left the Boers unhappy, thus leading to **the First Anglo-Boer War of 1880-1881.**
- In a bid to settle this war, **the 1881 Pretoria treaty** was signed between the British and the Boers.
- The discovery of gold at Witwatersrand **in Transvaal in 1884 attracted more people to Transvaal in search for business opportunities. These came to be known as the *Uitlanders*.**
- The arrival of the **Uitlanders**, their numbers and demands brought more **clashes or conflicts between the two communities.**
- **It also worried President Paul Kruger of Transvaal Republic.**
- President Paul Kruger of Transvaal decided to **subject them to many** kinds of **mistreatment**, hence increasing the tension between the two white communities.
- In 1895, **Cecil Rhodes - the Cape Prime Minister** organized the **unsuccessful raid against the Boers of Transvaal.**
- Once again, the **British were defeated** and became more determined to avenge this defeat.
- Between **1899 and 1902**, there was the **Second Anglo-Boer** war which the British won.
- This war was ended by the **Vereeniging Treaty of 1902.** However, this did not create permanent peace between the two white communities.
- **In 1908, there was the National** meeting or Convention in **Durban that drafted the closer union constitution** for the whites.
- **On 31st May, 1910, the union constitution** came into being which ended the long term misunderstandings between the two.
- **In conclusion**, the relationship between the two white communities after the discovery of minerals was sour until the signing of the Act of union in 1910.
- **ATTEMPTS TOWARDS FEDERATION IN SOUTH AFRICA OR ANGLO-BOER RELATIONS IN THE LAST HALF OF THE 19TH CENTURY:**
- A federation can be defined as a political system in which a number of states form a union.
- When Lord Carnarvon was made the British Colonial Secretary in 1874, he made plans to form a federation of South Africa.
- It should however be noted that earlier on Britain had refused the idea of a federation on the grounds that the scheme was expensive. But because of the minerals, the British wanted to federate South Africa.
- The Cape Colony resisted the federation because they saw themselves as very rich as compared to the Boer Republics.
- The Cape had also just got self-governance from Britain. So, to them federation was being under British control again.

- The Orange Free State resisted the federation idea because they did not trust the British since earlier on Britain had given Kimberly to Waterboer, chief of the Griqua. This was an area which the Boers thought was theirs.
- The Boers of Transvaal resisted the federation because they did not want to lose their independence to Britain which was won by the Sand River Convention of 1852.
- The Boers as a whole hated to have connections with the Cape Colony which treated Africans as human beings. They thought that through the Federation the British would extend their influence into the interior.
- The British therefore decided to force a Union with the Boers by annexing the Boer Republics.
- **THE ANNEXATION OF TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC IN 1877 (THE SOUTH AFRICAN REPUBLIC)**
 - In 1876 war broke out between the Bapedi and the Boers.
 - The main reason was that the Boers wanted to take over the area that belonged to the Bapedi and because of this Transvaal Republic was exhausted and it became bankrupt.
 - Lord Carnarvon utilized this opportunity of hardships or problems and annexed the Transvaal Republic with no resistance in April 1877.
 - The hatred that the Boers had for the British was aroused and so was the desire for independence. Therefore, the Boers elected Paul Kruger as their leader to deal with the problem (British).
- **WHY THE BRITISH ANNEXED TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC IN 1877:**
 - Transvaal means beyond the River Vaal.
 - It was a republic established by the Boer trekkers in the first half of the 19th Century.
 - The British annexed it immediately but granted it independence in 1852.
 - In 1877, the British annexed Transvaal for the second time, hence setting the stage for the first Anglo – Boer War of 1880 – 1881.
- **CAUSES OF THE ANNEXATION OF TRANSVAAL REPUBLIC:**
 - The long term hatred and suspicion between the Boers and the British since the British occupation of the Cape Colony led to the British annexation.
 - There was the rise of the British imperialism (influence) championed by Lord Carnarvon and others.
 - By 1877, the federation attempts were at the peak by the British. The supporters of the scheme led by Lord Carnarvon and Frere saw the annexation as a chance to realize the federation.
 - The British policy since the Great Trek was to follow up the Boers wherever they went so as to control them.
 - The discovery of minerals in Transvaal and the British desire to exploit them led to the annexation of the republic.
 - The Boers desire to protect their independence increased the British desire to annex Transvaal so as to check on Boer Nationalism.
 - The British thought that the Boers of Transvaal had been weakened by the Bapedi war i.e the war left Transvaal in a state of bankruptcy.

- There was public outcry in Britain that Transvaal be annexed to stop the Boer mistreatment of the Bantu.
- Military weakness of Transvaal i.e. the Transvaal government's failure to suppress a local uprising of Africans led to the British annexation.
- The British also feared that the internal instability in Transvaal would be exploited by the neighbours like the Zulu to attack Transvaal.
- The British hoped that the annexation would stop the Boer mistreatment of the **UITLANDERS** e.g. denying them political and civil rights.
- The failure by President Pretorius to establish a strong government in Transvaal that would fight against the British annexation encouraged the British to take over Transvaal in 1877.
- Even his successor Rev. Thomas Burgers was so unpopular among the Boers because of his financial and conservative religious beliefs.
- The British were scared that Transvaal was seeking permanent links with other Europeans especially when she attempted to raise a loan from the Portuguese in Mozambique for the railway line to Delgoa.
- The British wanted to "kill off" the rising trend of Boer nationalism.
- The British annexation of Basuto land encouraged the British to annex Transvaal in 1877 since Transvaal was near.
- President Burgers also made an economic mistake of borrowing money from the Cape to construct a railway line. This caused economic and political hardships which led to the British annexation, e.g;
- The land he had given as security was actually controlled by the Bapedi although claimed by the Boers. When the Boers tried to get it, the Pedi defeated them, thus increasing their political and financial difficulties.
- The British at the Cape refused to give more loans to Transvaal, leaving the state economically weak.
- The proposed Transvaal-Delgoa railway failed to take off because of lack of technical staff. As a result of the above, Transvaal started experiencing bankruptcy hence leading to its annexation.
- As a result of all these problems, the Boers were militarily weak since they lacked money to finance a modern army which led to the British annexation.
- Sir Theophilus Shepstone's report of 1877 was the immediate factor. In April 1877, Shepstone who had been sent to Transvaal by Carnarvon wrote a report recommending annexation of Transvaal and this was agreed up on by the British Colonial office.
- **EFFECTS OF THE ANNEXATION ON THE WHITES**
- It destroyed the federation plans of Lord Carnarvon and Sir Bartle Frere who had been sent to complete the federation project.
- The Boers lost their independence to the British.
- In addition, the British suspended the sitting of the Volksraad (Boer parliament) because they feared that it would create anti-British feelings, condemning British occupation.

- It increased the enmity and hostility between the Boers and British thus worsening the Anglo-Boers relations in future.
- Later the British were faced with demands by the people of Transvaal for the restoration of their independence.
- Even in Orange Free State, the Boers refused to discuss the federation issue until Transvaal had regained its independence.
- The Boers were humiliated since the British ignored their Volksraad and hence Transvaal became a controlled state.
- It aroused and strengthened Boer nationalism.
- The Boers now looked to a more active Paul Kruger for leadership, thus leading to his rise to power and he dominated the Boer politics up to 1900.
- A large part of South Africa was brought under the British control thus leading to the growth of British imperialism.
- The British used Transvaal as a base to extend their imperialism into African territories.
- It paved way for the union of the whites in South Africa which was achieved in 1910.
- It increased Boer co-operation especially between Orange Free State and Transvaal. For example, Orange Free State refused to co-operate with the British until they had granted Transvaal her independence.
- Transvaal sent a delegation led by Paul Kruger to London to plead for their independence although the British refused.
- It hardened the Boers and they became more rebellious towards the British since the British refused to peacefully return to the Boers their independence.
- It made about 6,000 disappointed Boers to meet at Wonderfontein which was located very Far East of Pretoria in 1879 and resolved to fight against the British and all those who supported them.
- The rebellious Boers even hoisted or raised the old Boer independence flag and declared that the Volksraad or Boer parliament was to meet in April 1880.
- The Boers boycotted the British goods and vowed to punish even those Boers who were co-operating with the British.
- The Boer farmers refused to pay taxes to the British.
- It led to loss of lives.
- It led to the loss of property.
- It led to the outbreak of the first Anglo – Boer war of 1880 – 1881.
- **EFFECTS OF THE ANNEXATION ON THE AFRICANS**
- They lost land to the Boers since the British thought the only way of making the Boers happy was through giving them Pedi and Zulu land.
- It created divisions among the Africans since the British used Swazi troops against the Pedi in 1878.
- It led to Anglo-Pedi conflicts since British wanted to get the land that the Boers claimed belonged to them.
- Many Africans lost their lives in the battles with the British.
- A lot of property was destroyed.

- The Pedi and Zulu lost their independence.
- Cetewayo and Sekukuni plus other traditional leaders lost their traditional authority.
- Led to the Anglo-Zulu war of 1879 in which the Zulu defeated the British at Isandhlwana.
- It led to the interference of both the Boers and the Zulu into the internal politics of the Zulu society.
- **THE FIRST ANGLO – BOER OF 1880-1881 OR THE TRANSVAAL WAR OF INDEPENDENCE:**
- This was a war between the British and the Transvaal Boers which took place between 1880 and 1881.
- The war was referred to as the **"White man's War"** because it involved only the Whites.
- The Boers were led by Paul Kruger and Joubert and the British were led by General Sir George Colley, Sir Evelyn Wood etc.
- **CAUSES OF THE FIRST ANGLO-BOER WAR OF 1880-1881:**
- The British annexation of the Boer republic of Transvaal in 1877 annoyed the Boers since they lost their independence.
- The 1877 Pedi attack on Transvaal weakened the Boers and this gave the British chance to occupy Transvaal in 1877 which greatly annoyed the Boers.
- The British desire to protect their citizens (Cape bankers) who had lent their money to Transvaal caused the First Anglo-Boer War.
- The British attempt to unite the white republics in South Africa into a federation (union) by force annoyed the Boers hence leading to the First Anglo- Boer War.
- The British desire to prevent any Zulu attack on the Transvaal Boers caused the war since the British were forced to occupy Transvaal in 1877 which annoyed the Boers, hence causing war.
- The Anglo – Zulu War of January 1879 at Isandhlwana encouraged the Boers to fight the British because they thought that the British had been weakened by the Zulu defeat.
- Over taxation caused the war. The Boers were being over taxed by the British and on the other hand, Paul Kruger during his time, he had also over taxed the Uitlanders hence causing the first Anglo - Boer war.
- The rise of the Boer nationalism (desire for independence) caused the first Anglo - Boer War since the Boers were determined to defend their independence from the British at all costs.
- The long term hatred and hostility (enmity) between the Boers and the British since the days of the Great Trek caused the first Anglo - Boer war.
- The economic prosperity of Transvaal which had started carrying out small scale industrialization annoyed the British which caused the war.
- The British were always following up the Boers wherever they went, hence leaving them with no alternative but to fight in 1880-1881.
- The rise of the British imperialism or desire to control the whole of South Africa promoted by men like Lord Carnarvon and Cecil Rhodes caused the war because the Boers were against it.

- The failure of Gladstone (the British Prime Minister) to give the Boers of Transvaal independence yet he had promised them freedom during his campaigns annoyed them hence causing the First Anglo - Boer war.
- The role played by Joubert and Paul Kruger on the side of the Boers and Carnarvon and Cecil Rhodes on British side. These men encouraged their sides to fight each other hence causing the first Anglo - Boer war 1880 - 1881.
- The discovery of minerals in South Africa caused the war because both the Boers and the British wanted to control the mineral wealth especially in Kimberly and Witwatersrand.
- The immediate cause was the taxation incident in which a Boer farmer failed to pay tax and his property was confiscated by the British in Natal. The Boers attacked the British and got back the property which annoyed the British and in December 1880 war broke out.
- The re-establishment of Transvaal republic by the Boers on 5th December 1880 with Paul Kruger as the president and Joubert as the commander in chief annoyed the British hence increasing the war.
- The mistreatment of the Uitlanders by Paul Kruger further annoyed the British hence causing the First Anglo - Boer war.
- **THE COURSE OF THE FIRST ANGLO - BOER WAR**
- The war began in December 1880 and ended in February 1881 with the defeat of the British.
- After the confiscation of the property of the Boer farmer who had refused to pay tax by the British, a group of 300 Boers attacked the British and got back the property of their colleague. This sparked off the First Anglo - Boer War.
- A serious rebellion began in December 1880 when the Boers re-established the independence of the Transvaal republic with Paul Kruger as the President and Joubert as the Commander-in-Chief.
- The first major encounter was on **20th December 1880** when a small British force of 264 men faced the Boers and half of the British soldiers were killed or wounded.
- In February 1881, the Boers defeated the British at the Battle of Majuba Hills and after the Boer defeat, the two parties signed a treaty known as the **Pretoria Convention or Treaty of 1881.**
- **EFFECTS OF THE FIRST ANGLO - BOER WAR**
- The British were defeated by the Boers at Majuba Hills in February 1881.
- There was heavy loss of life especially on the side of the British that lost over 200 soldiers.
- The war led to the destruction of property especially farms for the Boers.
- As a result famine broke out in the region.
- It affected trade in the region and led to its decline.
- After the war, the Boers were to stop discriminating against the British goods in Transvaal.
- It promoted Boer unity since the Boers of Orange Free State promised to help the Transvaal Boers in future.

- After the war, the boundaries of Transvaal were clearly defined. This reduced any further conflicts between Transvaal and her neighbours.
- The rights of the Uitlanders were to be protected by the Boers in Transvaal after the war.
- It increased the Boer nationalism as the Boers looked for more wins after their success over the British in 1881.
- It increased the enmity between the British and the Boers which led to more Anglo-Boer wars like the Jameson Raid of 1895 and the second Anglo-Boer war of 1899-1902.
- It led to the signing of the Pretoria Convention or Treaty of 1881 which gave the Boers in Transvaal self-rule in internal affairs under President PAUL KRUGER although the British were to continue controlling the foreign affairs of Transvaal.
- **THE PRETORIA CONVENTION OF 1881:**
- **Qn: Describe the terms of the Pretoria Convention of 1881.**
- This was the understanding or treaty that ended the First Anglo - Boer War of 1880-1881.
- It was signed between the two warring factions or groups i.e. the British and the Boers.
- The new British government of Prime Minister Gladstone was tired of the war and therefore he pressed for a peaceful resolution or end of the conflict.
- The treaty was signed to try and calm down the Transvaal Boers so that they could support the British Federation plans.
- Paul Kruger and Joubert signed and accepted the peace terms on behalf of the Boers.
- The treaty was signed in the capital of Transvaal known as Pretoria, north of the bigger town of Johannesburg
- It was signed in **August 1881.**
- **THE TERMS OF THE PRETORIA CONVENTION OF 1881:**
- The treaty had the following terms;
- Transvaal was to lose her independence to the British.
- Transvaal was however to be granted complete self -governance or independence in all her internal matters or affairs.
- The Transvaal Boers had to accept the British flag and suzerainty (authority) of her Majesty the Queen of England.
- The foreign affairs of Transvaal were to remain under the British control.
- Britain was to have limited responsibility over the local affairs of Transvaal through the **Resident** of Pretoria.
- The boundaries of Transvaal were to be defined, hence removing any further cause of conflicts with the neighbouring territories.
- Equal civil rights were to be extended to all people i.e. the rights of the Uitlanders were to be protected by the Transvaal Boers.
- Slavery was to be prohibited or stopped.
- The Boers were to stop discriminating against the British goods.
- There was to be free right of entry to the British subjects in Transvaal.

- **EFFECTS OR RESULTS OF THE PRETORIA CONVENTION OF 1881:**

- The convention reduced the hostilities or enmity between the Boers and the British by granting self-governance in the internal affairs to the Transvaal Boers.
- The Boers were dissatisfied or annoyed with their new colonial status i.e they had become a colony of Britain.
- The Boers lost their independence to the British.
- It led to the rise of Afrikaner or Boer nationalism and increased their desire for independence.
- The Boers of Transvaal united as a result of the Pretoria Convention of 1881.
- It gave rise to Paul Kruger and Joubert who were supported by the Boers of Transvaal so as to bring about independence from the British.
- The Boers of Orange Free State decided to unite with the Boers of Transvaal to defend the Boer values and cultures from the British influence.
- Even the Boers at the Cape developed sympathy with their colleagues beyond river Vaal.
- It left both parties angry and not satisfied since no one was a clear winner.
- It laid a foundation for more Anglo - Boer wars or conflicts like the Jameson Raid of 1895 and the Second Anglo - Boer War of 1899-1902.
- The terms of the convention made the Boers more stubborn and determined to resist the British Federation or Union plans.
- It led to a new **London treaty of 1887** in which the Boers and the British agreed on the following terms;
- The queen was no longer the Suzerain (ruler) of Transvaal.
- The British were to drop their nominal control (indirect control) over the local affairs of Transvaal.
- The two Boer republics of **Stella land** and **Goshen** were to remain out of Transvaal.
- The trade between the two parties (British and the Boers) was liberalized (made free).
- The treaty made the Boers to continue interfering in the Zulu politics.
- The Boer soldiers under Lukas Mayer Intervened and overthrew Dini Zulu, replacing him with his exiled father Cetewayo.
- The Zulu lost almost half of their land to the Boers since the British never intervened in the local affairs of the Boers.
- It led to the rise of Cecil Rhodes who was determined to silence the Transvaal Boers. He rose as a member of Parliament in 1881 and later in 1890 he became the Prime Minister of the Cape Colony.
- Both the whites and the Africans lost property in the conflicts that developed between the Boers and the British after the Pretoria Convention of 1881.
- The treaty encouraged the Boers to associate more with the Germans and the Portuguese in order to counter balance or deal with the British threats.
- It weakened the Zulu further hence confirming their loss of independence.

- **THE UITLANDERS**

- ***Qn: Who were the Uitlanders?***

- These were rich people mainly Europeans who came to South Africa after the discovery of minerals to exploit the minerals.
- The Uitlanders comprised of the Australians, the Newzealanders among others but most of them were from Britain and therefore they were British citizens.
- The word "Uitlanders" is a Boer word meaning foreigners or outlanders.
- Their main area of settlement was the Boer republic of Transvaal.
- Once in Transvaal, they dominated the economy of Transvaal, bought a lot of land and ended up becoming very rich.
- While in Transvaal, they lived in the Rand mining centre.
- The Uitlanders supported the British interests in South Africa and therefore, they were close to Cecil Rhodes who was the Prime Minister of the Cape Colony.
- They later created a security threat to the Transvaal Boers under President Paul Kruger.
- They were a group of people who had no political rights in Transvaal. For example, they had no right to vote members of parliament.
- They were responsible for the outbreak of the Anglo - Boer wars between 1880 and 1902.
- **JOHN CECIL RHODES (1853 -1902)**
- Cecil Rhodes was born in 1853 in England to a Clergy man.
- He was a leading British imperialist in South Africa.
- His dream was to follow the footsteps of his father.
- Unfortunately, his health was fragile i.e. he was sickly.
- He was forced to move to South Africa where he met his fortune later.
- At the age of 17 years, he joined his brother on a cotton farm in South Africa. This set the platform for the beginning of his fortune.
- When minerals were discovered, Cecil Rhodes managed to buy some mines in Kimberly.
- At Kimberly, he achieved a lot of wealth and his real career in South Africa.
- He became very rich such that he later completed his self-sponsored degree in Oxford University.
- In 1881, Cecil Rhodes formed a mining company known as the **De Beers Mining Company Limited**. This company controlled almost all the South African Diamond trade.
- Later, he bought his rival company known as **Barney Barnato** and therefore he became a monopolist.
- In 1881, he became a member of the Cape parliament.
- When gold was discovered in **1886** at **Witwatersrand** in Transvaal, Cecil Rhodes became one of the major players in the gold mining.
- He later climbed the ladders of leadership due to the influence of his friend Hofmeyer, the leader of the Boer political party known as the **Afrikaner Bond**. For example, in **1890** he became the Prime Minister of the Cape colony.
- Cecil Rhodes' greatest ambition was to have an expansion of the British power in Central and South Africa i.e. "Painting the map of Africa red".
- He supported the federation plan of uniting South Africa under the British control.

- He also fought German imperialism in South West Africa (Namibia) as well as the Portuguese influence in Mozambique.
- He conflicted with President Paul Kruger of Transvaal in the struggle to determine the master of South Africa's politics.
- Cecil Rhodes also felt that **Bechuanaland** or **Botswana** should be under the British control. Therefore, in 1886 the British declared a protectorate over Bechuanaland now Botswana.
- He blocked the possibility of the German – Boer alliance in South Africa.
- He helped the British to gain control of more African land for example, Pondo land, Zulu land and Tonga land.
- He even blocked the Boer or Transvaal's expansion northwards.
- He always fought for the economic integration with Transvaal to allow the free movement of goods and services.
- He provided full support for the Uitlanders' civil and political rights in Transvaal for example fair taxation, use of English, fair trial and fair business contracts among others.
- He even planned to smuggle arms or weapons from Johannesburg to use them against President Paul Kruger.
- He sought for the full support of the British Colonial Secretary Joseph Chamberlain to fight for the civil and political rights of the Uitlanders in Transvaal.
- In 1895, he planned the unsuccessful Jameson Raid to overthrow the Transvaal government under Paul Kruger.
- Later he resigned from his post as Prime Minister of the Cape Colony after the failure of the Jameson Raid in 1895.
- Even his friendship with Jan Hendrick Hofmeyer, the leader of the ***Afrikaner Bond*** (a Boer political party) collapsed.
- He therefore devoted his whole life to the activities of the **British South African Company (BSACO)**.
- He had founded this company to support British imperialism in Central and South Africa.
- He even acquired permission from the British government to govern Rhodesia or Zimbabwe.
- He set up a police force under his brother **John Rhodes** and Jameson to improve security in Botswana.
- Cecil Rhodes - the great British Empire builder died in **1902** and was buried in Zimbabwe at Mat-tops.
- **PAUL KRUGER (1825 - 1904)**
- Paul Kruger was born on 10th October **1825** in the Cape Colony.
- He was a leading Boer nationalist who defended Boer nationalism in South Africa.
- He was a clever and determined young man.
- He spent most of his early life hunting and fighting. That is why he never got meaningful education. The only book he ever read was a Bible.
- At 12 years, he had participated in the Great Trek. He therefore left the Cape Colony during the Great Trek.

- The Great Trek shaped his life and later actions in South Africa.
- He always associated his life with great honour to the early Great Trek battles.
- He strongly hated the British from the bitter lessons of the Great Trek.
- He also had a passionate feeling to defend the Boer hard won independence at all costs.
- He was a war monger or war loving leader.
- He was always determined to keep the Boer values of racial prejudice and strong resistance against the British.
- Paul Kruger's future actions were further shaped by his forceful personality and oratory or good speaking skills.
- During the early years of the Transvaal Republic, he commanded the Boers against African hostile groups like the **Pedi** during their resistance of 1877.
- He also served in the Boer military units and he actively participated in the Great Trek wars.
- Because of his great service in the Boer military units, he was appointed to the position of Commander General of the entire Transvaal by **1880**.
- He led the Boer resistance movement against the British annexation of Transvaal in 1877.
- Together with Willem Joubert, Paul Kruger led a Boer delegation to London to demand for Transvaal's independence, but unfortunately the request was rejected by the British.
- They were left with no alternative but to prepare for an armed rebellion against the British which took place in **1880-1881** and this was the First Anglo Boer War.
- His victory over the British in the First Anglo – Boer War of 1880 - 1881 war won him great admiration or support from the Boers.
- He was then appointed together with Joubert and Pretorius to administer the country (Transvaal).
- Because of his popularity and respect among the Boers, Paul Kruger was elected President of Transvaal four times i.e. in 1883, 1888, 1893 and 1898.
- As leader of Transvaal, Paul Kruger pursued different ideas conflicting with those of Cecil Rhodes – the British Cape Prime Minister.
- He desired to make a united and strong Boer republic governing the whole of South Africa.
- He hoped to extend its territory to the East Coast so as to be in direct contact with the outside world.
- Paul Kruger led the Boers in the famous Jameson Raid of 1895, where he defeated and embarrassed the British.
- The big number of Uitlanders in Transvaal threatened Paul Kruger's plans for a free united and independent Transvaal Republic without the British interference.
- To check and block the Uitlanders, he denied them their political and civil rights in Transvaal. For example;
- He blocked the Uitlanders from voting or to be voted for.
- He did not allow them to be tried by jury i.e he denied them fair trial.
- They were also prevented from speaking English in public places.

- He forced Uitlanders' children to study in the Dutch controlled schools.
- He over taxed their goods or he overtaxed the Uitlanders.
- The British made several attempts to lobby for the improved conditions of the Uitlanders but Paul Kruger remained adamant to their demands.
- In his response, Paul Kruger said, *"Go back and tell your people that I shall never give them anything, I shall never change my policy. Now let the dam burst"*.
- Paul Kruger closed all possible British railway and road routes from the Cape to Transvaal in order to disorganize the British economy further.
- He instead built the Delgoa – Transvaal railway to connect Transvaal to the East Coast of South Africa and also for Transvaal's economic independence.
- He used the wealth acquired from the Gold mines to build up a very strong army for his defense against the British.
- He discouraged the use of the British Cape and Natal railways by increasing or hiking the transport fees on the Transvaal sections of those lines.
- He went to the extent of encouraging the German imperialism in South West Africa (Namibia).
- He therefore sought for a Boer – German alliance in order to frustrate Cecil Rhodes' dreams of the Cape-Cairo links.
- Paul Kruger's government demanded for the immediate British withdrawal of their troops from Transvaal towards the Second Anglo-Boer war.
- He gave an ultimatum or order of 48 hours for them to leave.
- The British ignored the ultimatum (order) and therefore he declared war on **11th October 1899**.
- Paul Kruger and others led the Boers into the second Anglo-Boer War of 1899-1902.
- Initially, his forces registered temporary victories.
- But soon, he was defeated leading to the wide spread destruction of the Boer economy.
- In **August 1900**, Paul Kruger was forced to flee to Europe.
- He died of heart failure on **14th July 1904** in Clarens, Switzerland.
- He however left a legacy of a solid Boer civilization in the history of South Africa.
- **Explain the contribution of the following people to the history of South Africa:**
 - John Cecil Rhodes
 - Paul Kruger
- **THE JAMESON RAID OF 1895**
 - The Jameson Raid of 1895 was an attempt by the British to overthrow the government of President Paul Kruger of Transvaal.
 - It was part of the long term conflicts between the British under Cecil Rhodes and the Boers under Paul Kruger.
 - The key leaders of the raid were Cecil Rhodes, Paul Kruger and Jameson.
- **CAUSES OF THE JAMESON RAID OF 1895**
 - The role of Cecil Rhodes, the Prime Minister of the Cape Colony who was the chief planner of the raid i.e. he was determined to overthrow the Transvaal government forcefully so as to bring Transvaal under the British control.

- The desire to federate or unite the white republics in South Africa led to the raid because Paul Kruger had refused the idea. For example, he had refused the idea of a customs union with the cape colony.
- The increased British imperialism promoted by Cecil Rhodes i.e. the desire to control the whole of South Africa including Transvaal by the British caused the raid.
- The long term enmity between the Boers and the British in South Africa since the days of the Great Trek caused the Jameson Raid of 1895.
- The British continued following of the Boers wherever they went led to the Jameson Raid in 1895
- The increased Boer nationalism and unity promoted by strong Boer nationalists like Paul Kruger caused the raid.
- The British surrounding of the Boer controlled areas like Transvaal which denied them sea contact by 1895 caused the conflict.
- The British also constantly regarded the Boers as their subjects which annoyed them, hence causing the raid.
- The defeat of the British by the Boers in the First Anglo-Boer War at Majuba Hills in 1881 annoyed them. They therefore desired to revenge on the Boers in 1895.
- The scramble for minerals like diamond and gold in South Africa between the Boers and the British caused the raid.
- The formation of the British South African Company (BSACO) in 1890 by Cecil Rhodes worried the Boers in Transvaal which caused the conflict.
- The poor past military records of the British encouraged the Boers to fight them. For example, they had been defeated at the Battle of Isandhlwana in 1879 by the Zulu as well as the Basuto in the Anglo-Basuto War of 1880-1881.
- The British annexation of Bechuanaland (Botswana) in 1885 provided a base for the British to raid Transvaal in 1895.
- The role of Dr. Jameson who led the raid against Transvaal was another cause.
- The role of Sir Robinson Hercules (the British High Commissioner or ambassador) in South Africa) and Sir Joseph Chamberlain (the British Colonial Secretary) caused the raid. These men exaggerated Transvaal's threats to the British interests in South Africa, hence encouraging the British to invade Transvaal in 1895.
- The raid was also part of economic war or rivalry between the British and the Boers over trade and commerce. For example, Paul Kruger was discriminating the British goods in Transvaal.
- The role of Frank Rhodes - Cecil Rhodes' elder brother who was to smuggle fire arms into Transvaal caused the raid. He was also required to incite the Uitlanders to revolt against the Boers.
- The role of the press caused the raid. For example, Miss Flora Shaw – the Editor of the "London Times" newspaper in Britain encouraged the British government to invade the Boers and even promised to publish the raid.
- The arrival of the Uitlanders and their ever increasing numbers in Transvaal worried the Boers under Paul Kruger i.e. by 1895 three quarters of the population were Uitlanders.

- Paul Kruger as a way of mistreating them began denying them their civil and political rights which caused the raid. For example;
- He denied them voting rights i.e. they were not allowed to vote members of parliament or to be voted for.
- He denied them freedom of movement.
- He subjected them to unfair trials in special Kangaroo or military courts.
- He insulted them as minerals thieves, drunkards, outcasts, exploiters etc.
- He overtaxed them with an aim of making them poor
- He stopped them from speaking English which was their mother language in public places. He instead wanted them to use the Afrikaans language.
- He forced their children to study under the Dutch or Boer controlled schools which annoyed them.
- He denied them fat (profitable) business contracts or deals and always gave them to the Boer companies.
- He denied them citizenship rights and kept on increasing the period of staying before one acquired citizenship i.e. from five to seven years, seven to ten years and then ten to fourteen years.
- He also changed the voting period from two to five years. He then increased them to seven and later ten years i.e. only those Uitlanders who had stayed in Transvaal for ten years and above could vote members of parliament.
- The role of Uitlanders Reform Committee of 1892 that appealed for help from the British Cape Prime Minister Cecil Rhodes in their struggle for their civil and political rights caused the raid.
- Cecil Rhodes' determination to protect the rights of the Uitlanders caused the raid.
- The presence of rival or competing European powers in the neighbourhood of South Africa like the Germans in South West Africa (Namibia) and the Portuguese in Mozambique encouraged the British to invade Transvaal in 1895.
- The refusal by the British to cooperate with the Boers over the railways and tariffs (taxes) in 1885 increased conflicts between the two parties.
- Paul Kruger's act of changing the railway routes and roads from the Cape and Durban to Maputo in Mozambique greatly annoyed the British, hence causing the raid.
- The failure by both the British and the Boers to settle their differences peacefully caused the raid. For example, Paul Kruger's failure to respect the terms of the Pretoria Convention of 1881 like not to mistreat the Uitlanders annoyed the British.
- The uncompromising character of the key men in power in South Africa i.e. Paul Kruger and Cecil Rhodes caused the raid. These men were war mongers (war-like) who believed in war as the only solution to their problems.
- The determination of the Boers to safe guard their political and economic independence from the British caused the raid.
- In conclusion, the causes of the Jameson Raid of 1895 were political, social and economic or it was a result of the long term misunderstandings between the Boers and the British in South Africa.
- **HOW THE JAMESON RAID WAS ORGANIZED OR THE COURSE**

- The raid was sparked off by the Uitlanders' appeal to Cecil Rhodes for help to acquire their civil and political rights in Transvaal.
- Since Cecil Rhodes wanted to extend the British influence in South Africa, he arranged for fire arms to be smuggled into Transvaal.
- The plan was that after arming the Uitlanders, they would revolt against the Transvaal government on an agreed day.
- On that day, the British troops would intervene in support of the rebellion and overthrow the Transvaal government.
- On 20th December 1895, Dr. Jameson under the instruction of Cecil Rhodes led 500 men from Botswana (Bechuanaland) and attacked Transvaal.
- Unfortunately, the Uitlanders did not rise up as expected. Worse still, the Transvaal Boers came to know about the raid early enough, hence leading to its failure.
- Jameson and his men were quickly surrounded up by the Boers at a place called Dornkorp and they were forced to surrender.
- After the raid, Jameson was recalled to London where he was tried and imprisoned for four months.
- Cecil Rhodes was also forced resign from his post as Prime Minister of the Cape Colony.
- **REASONS WHY THE JAMESON RAID OF 1895 FAILED**
- There was poor planning and co-ordination by the chief planner Cecil Rhodes. He planned to attack on 18th December 1895 but then cancelled without proper co-ordination with Jameson.
- Cecil Rhodes was over ambitious with many dreams to be achieved within a short time and this could not make him succeed.
- The British government in London did not fully support the raid. This was because Cecil Rhodes under took the raid to be a personal initiative or project and therefore never fully involved the British government.
- The choice of leadership for the raid was wrong. Cecil Rhodes chose his close friend Jameson, a medical doctor to lead soldiers in the raid who was neither a military person nor a politician.
- Jameson was so impatient, rushing and emotional. For example, he was told not to attack but he went ahead and attacked without enough preparation.
- The British underestimated the military strength of the Boers which was a big mistake. For example, Jameson took a small army of 350 – 500 men who could not defeat the Boers.
- The Boers came to know about the raid before it took place and therefore they were prepared for it.
- The failure of Frank Rhodes to smuggle fire arms or guns into Transvaal for the Uitlanders as planned earlier led to the failure of the raid.
- The breakdown in communication between Cecil Rhodes at the Cape and Jameson made the raid to fail. This was due to the failure of the British soldiers to cut off the Pretoria telegraph lines and instead they cut off the Cape lines.
- It also failed because President Paul Kruger had by then built a very strong army from the mineral wealth.

- The Boers were also very much determined to preserve their independence from the British at all costs.
- The popularity of President Paul Kruger in Transvaal at that time made the raid to fail because it helped him to mobilize many Boers to go and fight against the British.
- The differences between the Uitlanders and Cecil Rhodes made the raid to fail. The Uitlanders wanted to protect their businesses or wealth while Cecil Rhodes wanted to overthrow Paul Kruger and annex or add Transvaal Republic to the rest of South Africa.
- The failure of the Uitlanders in Transvaal to riot or rebel against the Boers made the raid to fail. This was because of the poor mobilization by Frank Rhodes.
- The lack of the geographical knowledge of the area (Transvaal) by Jameson and his men made the raid to fail.
- The immediate arrest of Dr. Jameson and his men made other fighters to lose morale which led to the final failure of the raid.
- In conclusion, the failure of the raid was a result of the conflicting interests or weakness of the raiders.
- **EFFECTS OF THE JAMESON RAID OF 1895**
- The British were defeated by the Boers. Their small force was surrounded at Dornkorp near Kruger's dorp and was forced to surrender.
- Cecil Rhodes was forced to resign as the Prime Minister of the Cape Colony.
- Sir Robinson Hercules was also recalled as the British High Commissioner or Governor at the Cape and replaced with Alfred Milner.
- Dr. John Jameson was captured alive leading his arrest.
- It increased the Boer hatred towards the British in South Africa.
- The victory of Paul Kruger in 1895 made him more popular among the Boers and therefore he was re-elected as president of Transvaal in 1898.
- It increased Boer nationalism and determination to preserve their Independence. Their victory gave them a belief that they would defeat the British at all times.
- It increased the mistreatment of the Uitlanders in Transvaal by Paul Kruger.
- It was a humiliation or shame to the British worldwide since they had been defeated by a small state (Transvaal).
- It led to a closer understanding or co-operation between Orange Free State and Transvaal since they now had a common enemy (Britain).
- It destroyed the possibility of any federation or union between the two white communities in South Africa at that time since the two were enemies.
- It also led to the international isolation and condemnation of the British which affected international relations. For example, Kaiser (King) William II of Germany sent a congratulatory message to Paul Kruger upon his victory over the British. This worsened the relations between Britain and Germany.
- It encouraged the Transvaal Boers to import guns especially from Germany to defend their territory any future attacks.
- The failure of the raid encouraged the Shona and the Ndebele people of Central Africa to rise up against the British from 1896 – 1898.

- It increased the enmity between the British and the Boers. This later led to the Second Anglo-Boer war of 1899 - 1902 as the British wanted to revenge against their defeat by the Boers in the Jameson raid of 1895.
- **Explain the causes of the Jameson Raid of 1895.**
- **Why did the raid fail?**
- **What were the causes of the Anglo-Boer War of 1895?**
- **How did this war affect the British and the Boers?**
- **THE SECOND ANGLO - BOER WAR OF 1899 – 1902**
- This war is commonly or famously known as the Second Anglo-Boer War or the Gentleman's War or the South African War or the White man's War.
- It was fought mainly between the British and the Boers.
- At first, the Africans served mainly in non-combat or non-military positions as cooks, scouts and wagon drivers.
- Fighting took place in all the major four colonies of South Africa i.e. Transvaal, Orange Free State, Natal and the Cape. It started in 1899 and ended in 1902.
- It was the last major clash or conflict between the Boers and the British.
- It was fought to determine the master of South African politics.
- The British forces were led by Alfred Milner, General Roberts and later Lord Kitchener.
- On the other side, the Boers were led by several Generals like Paul Kruger, Jan Christian Smuts, Hertzog, Louis Botha and Dewet among others.
- **CAUSES OF THE SECOND ANGLO-BOER WAR OF 1899-1902**
- The war had both long term and immediate causes as explained below;
- The war was a result of the long held suspicion and mistrust (long term enmity) between the British and the Boers since the days of the Great Trek.
- The British constantly reminded the Boers that they are their subjects, something that did not please them, hence leading to the Second Anglo-Boer War.
- The British habit of following the Boers wherever they went in order to control them annoyed them, hence leaving them with no option but to fight them.
- The British policy of surrounding or encircling the Boer Republics of Transvaal and Orange Free State scared the Boers. For example, they annexed Botswana in **1885** and Zululand in **1887** to block Transvaal. Similarly, the Cape Colony was in the South, Natal in the East and in the North the British had established Rhodesia (Zimbabwe).
- The determination of the Boers to defend their political and economic independence (increased Boer nationalism) from the British caused the war.
- On the other hand, the British had a desire to crush the Boer independence and kill their nationalism.
- The rise of Boer war mongers like Paul Kruger who championed or promoted Boer nationalism in South Africa caused the war. Paul Kruger was a hardliner who could never compromise with the British on anything.
- The poor past military records of the British always encouraged the Boers to fight them. For example, the British had also been defeated at the Battle of Isandhlwana in 1879 by the Zulu.

- The rise of British Imperialism (determination to put the whole of South Africa under the British control) and their desire to form a union of South Africa threatened the Boers.
- The British desire to share and control the mineral wealth like Diamonds and Gold in Transvaal annoyed the Boers.
- The age of the scramble for South Africa among the Europeans intensified the enmity. For example, the British had feared that the Germans who were already in Namibia would ally with the Boers to push them out of South Africa.
- The humiliating defeat of the British in the First Anglo-Boer War of 1880-1881 also encouraged the Boers and the British to fight each other in 1899.
- The Pretoria Convention of 1881 which ended the First Anglo - Boer war caused the war. This treaty was unfair to the Boers because it gave the British powers to dominate the trade and foreign affairs of Transvaal which denied the Boers of Transvaal their Independence, thus forcing the Boers to fight the British.
- The failure of the Jameson raid of 1895 increased the British desire to revenge on the Boers, thus preparing a fertile ground for the Second Anglo-Boer War of 1899-1902.
- Similarly, the congratulatory message sent by the German Emperor – Kaiser William II to Paul Kruger following the Jameson raid excited the Boers, hence encouraging them to provoke the British into war.
- The re-election of Paul Kruger as the president of Transvaal in 1898 increased conflicts as the British vowed to overthrow him, hence leading to the Second Anglo - Boer war.
- The formation of a joint military co-operation between Orange Free State and Transvaal as a way to prepare for war. In Orange Free State, Transvaal found an ally (friend), which gave the Boers confidence to attack the British in 1899.
- The role of **Steyn**, the President of Orange Free State who supported Transvaal in their war effort against the British caused war. The Boers in Transvaal were also expecting support from the Boers of Natal and the Cape Colony.
- The issue of the railway tariffs or taxes caused the war. The Boers were charging high taxes (tariffs) on the British goods entering Transvaal along the railways between Transvaal and the Cape Colony which annoyed the British.
- Paul Kruger's construction of a railway line in **1887** from Transvaal into the Portuguese territory of Mozambique cut off trade with the British and instead encouraged more trade with the Portuguese which annoyed the British, hence leading to war.
- In addition, Paul Kruger never wanted to trade with the British and therefore he closed the railway line from Transvaal to the Cape which further annoyed the British, hence causing the war.
- Furthermore, Paul Kruger's closure of all the Boer roads leading to Cape Town due to the British overtaxing of Transvaal goods annoyed the British further because it cut off trade with the British at the Cape. This therefore led to war.
- The presence of the **Uitlanders** in Transvaal politically and economically scared President Paul Kruger given the fact that majority of them were British citizens. Paul

Kruger therefore subjected them to many forms of mistreatment that included denying them their political, economic and civil rights, hence worsening the already fragile relationship between the British and the Boers. For example;

- He kept on changing the voting period first from 5 to 7 and then to 10 years of stay in Transvaal before one could be allowed to vote.
- The Uitlanders were further refused to speak English publically.
- He further refused them to participate in the politics of Transvaal.
- They were also overtaxed.
- They were oppressed in the courts of law i.e. they were tried by *Kangaroo or military courts* and therefore he denied them trial by jury or fair trial.
- The Uitlanders' freedom of movement was also restricted by Paul Kruger.
- The Uitlanders' children were to study under the Dutch-controlled schools.
- The Uitlanders' increased wealth alarmed or scared the Boers, hence increasing their mistreatment. For example, by 1895, the Uitlanders had purchased nearly all the land in Transvaal.
- Paul Kruger's refusal to offer them profitable or fat business contracts further angered the British, thus leading to war.
- President Paul Kruger's insults to the Uitlanders angered the British. For example, he called them Outlanders, Outcasts, mineral thieves, social misfits etc.
- Paul Kruger's refusal of the Uitlanders rights to citizenship annoyed the British. In fact, he constantly extended the period of stay of these Uitlanders in Transvaal before they could qualify to be citizens.
- The failure of the May-June 1899 Bloemfontein Peace Talks between the British official **Alfred Milner** and Paul Kruger over the issue of the Uitlanders in Transvaal led to war. Alfred Milner walked away in protest.
- The British formation of the South African Association to protect the rights of the Uitlanders in Transvaal scared the Boers, thus leading to war.
- The British were also annoyed by the increasing cooperation between the Germans of Namibia and the Boers in Transvaal.
- The formation of the **South African League** caused the war. This was a body of imperialist minded British settlers who kept on demanding for the annexation of the Boer Republics also annoyed the Boers, hence leading to the war.
- The rise of British imperialism under Joseph Chamberlain (the **British Colonial Secretary**) who had been criticized for the failure of the Jameson Raid of 1895. He made three errors of the situation in South Africa by 1899 which led to war. For example, he exaggerated the Boer threat to the British interests in South Africa, he also believed in war as the only way to revive the British image after the abortive 1895 Jameson raid. And as a champion of British imperialism, he appointed Sir Alfred Milner who shared the same views like his.
- The appointment of **Sir Alfred Milner** as the new British High Commissioner at the Cape in **1897** who was also an **imperialist** and **war monger** set the stage for the Second Anglo-Boer War.
- Joseph Chamberlain and Alfred Milner believed in the British supremacy in South Africa which annoyed the Boers, thus leading to war.

- Alfred Milner insisted that Transvaal had been granted conditional independence by the Pretoria Convention of 1881 and therefore it could be taken away any time. All this annoyed the Boers, thus leading to war.
- The murder of aUitlander in Transvaal and the failure by Paul Kruger to punish a Boer farmer who had killed the Uitlander annoyed the British, hence causing the war.
- Sir Alfred Milner's stationing of troops near Transvaal borders scared the Boers and therefore it worsened the relationship between the British and the Boers.
- The immediate cause of the war was Paul Kruger's ultimatum or harsh demands to the British to withdraw their troops from the borders of Transvaal within 48 hours.
- When the British refused to answer Paul Kruger's ultimatum, the Boers decided to declare war on the British on **1st October 1899** and therefore the Second Anglo-Boer War had started.
- **THE COURSE OF THE SECOND ANGLO - BOER WAR**
- The war was organized by **Joseph Chamberlain**, the British Colonial Secretary and **Sir Alfred Milner**, the British High Commissioner at the Cape Colony.
- In 1899, Alfred Milner stationed the British soldiers near the borders of Transvaal under President Paul Kruger.
- On **9th October 1899**, Paul Kruger sent an ultimatum or order to the British giving them 48 hours to withdraw their troops or face war.
- Since the British wanted war, they refused to respond to the ultimatum and therefore war broke out on **11th October 1899**, two days later.
- The British were so unprepared for the war since they had few troops within South Africa. On the other hand, the Boers were prepared since Orange Free State and Transvaal were united against the British. As a result, the Boers easily defeated the British at **Lady Smith** in Natal, **Kimberly** and **Mafeking** in the Cape Colony.
- Later on, when the British received reinforcement (support) from England and India, the Boers were also defeated at **Magersfontein**, **Stromberg** and **Colenso**. The week in which the Boers were defeated was termed as the "**Black Week**" by the Boers.
- Early in 1900, the Boers were again defeated as the British occupied the city of Bloemfontein in Orange Free State, Lady Smith in Natal, Pretoria in Transvaal and they annexed the Transvaal republic.
- Paul Kruger himself escaped to Europe in **August 1900**.
- From 1900, the Boers resorted to the guerilla warfare but even this failed.
- When **Lord Kitchener** replaced **Lord Roberts** as the new British Chief of Staff, he adopted the **scorched earth policy** aimed at weakening and defeating the Boer resistance once and for all. He therefore destroyed the Boer farms (crops) and houses and killed their livestock.
- Concentration camps were set up by the British to accommodate the Boer civilians who were not willing to fight and also to facilitate "cleaning up" operations. Soon the Boers' resistance came to an end.
- The war ended with the signing of the **Vereeniging peace Treaty of 1902**.
- **EFFECTS OF THE SECOND ANGLO – BOER WAR**

- The war affected both the Africans and whites in South Africa as noted below;
- **Effects of the war on the Africans**
- There was heavy loss of lives where by 14000 people including Africans, Boers and the British were killed.
- This resulted into heavy depopulation in the region.
- A lot of property was destroyed like houses, crops and animals which weakened the South African economy.
- It led to a decline in agricultural production. As a result, there was shortage of food which made the Africans to starve, thus leading to famine.
- The trading and industrial activities were disrupted by the war.
- The Africans who left their jobs in the mines to go and fight were punished by their masters on reporting back after the war.
- The Africans were disarmed by the whites and this made them defenseless. The responsibility of disarming the Africans was put in the hands of **Baden Powell**.
- The Africans lost any hope of getting back their independence.
- The British withdrew their support and protection of the human rights of the non-whites like the Blacks, coloureds and Indians.
- The Africans lost their voting rights.
- The Africans lost their land to the whites.
- The Africans were displaced and sent to reserves that later became **Bantustans**.
- The Africans were subjected to racial discrimination. This later led to the establishment of Apartheid in South Africa in 1948.
- The movement of the Africans in South Africa was restricted as the whites introduced the Pass System after the war which required the Africans to carry pass books.
- Many women and children were left homeless.
- The Africans were isolated from the politics of South Africa.
- The Africans who were sent to reserves were forced to provide labour to the whites.
- The Africans remained slaves to the whites just like the Boers had wished from the days of the Great Trek.
- The Africans suffered from poverty as a result of their participation in the war.
- There was also misery and suffering among the Africans due to the effects of the war like famine.
- The African cultures were undermined and therefore declined because of the influence of the foreign culture which the Africans adopted from the whites as they fought together during the war.
- The Africans lived in constant fear and insecurity.
- The Africans suffered from inferiority complex after the war.
- The Africans lost their freedom to the whites.
- The Africans later came out to fight for their freedom and this led to the growth of African nationalism. This led to the formation of political parties like the **African National Congress** (ANC) which eventually liberated South Africa in 1994.
- **EFFECTS OF THE WAR ON THE WHITES**
- The war led to the defeat of the Boers by the British for the first time.

- The Boers **temporarily** or briefly lost their independence to the British and the Boer states became British colonies.
- The economy of the Boers was disrupted, thus leading to poverty.
- The Boer farms, cattle, industries and homes were destroyed during the war.
- The Boer state of Orange Free State came to be referred to as **Orange River Colony**.
- The war led to the signing of the **Vereeniging Peace Treaty of 1902** in which the Boers emerged victorious because they successfully convinced the British to accept their demands.
- This treaty improved the relationship between the British and the Boers in South Africa through its terms which included the following;
- The Boers of Orange Free State and Transvaal were to regain their independence in future.
- Both the Boers and the British were to have equal status in South Africa.
- The English and Dutch languages were to be given equal status in South Africa.
- The war cleared way for the **1908 Draft Constitution** in South Africa. This was drafted during the **1908 National Conference** that was held in the town of Durban.
- It cleared way for the **1910 South African Union**. This was because after the war, the two white communities agreed to unite as brothers and sisters.
- The Boer prisoners of war were released and pardoned after the war.
- The British agreed to compensate the Boers for the war damages. For example, they offered 3 million pounds to the Boers for economic recovery.
- A further 30 million pounds interest free loan was offered to the Boers
- The British agreed to withdraw the protection of the African rights and freedoms which paved way for the Apartheid system in South Africa.
- The war made the whites to control the politics of South Africa.
- The British and Boers agreed to deny the Africans their voting rights and they blocked them from participating in national politics.
- It was agreed that the Boers should keep their guns although the Africans were disarmed.
- The war was costly to both parties and it required large amounts of money to rehabilitate and develop the economy after the war.
- The war increased the Boer unity and nationalism.
- The general economic prosperity that came with the discovery of the minerals was eroded or retarded by the war.
- It led to the formation of a **Reconciliation Committee** at the Cape to unite the Boers and the British.
- Free trade was to be conducted among the whites. Therefore, the Boers agreed to stop discriminating the British goods.
- Some of the Boers refused to give up fighting and therefore they resorted to the guerilla war fare. This led to the brutality by the British. For example, Lord Kitchener carried out more mop-up operations in which he killed many Boers who were still fighting against the British.

- It led to the creation of concentration camps where the women, children and old Boer civilians were kept and they became prisoners of war.
- In the concentration camps, there were extreme hardships or problems like overcrowding, starvation and diseases, thus increasing misery and suffering among the Africans.
- The war led to the end of the old generation of Boer leaders in South Africa. For example, President Paul Kruger of Transvaal fled to Europe where he died in 1904.
- It brought in a new generation of democratic or liberal leaders like Louis Botha, Christian Smuts and Lord Kitchener.
- **THE VEREENIGING PEACE TREATY OF 1902:**
- It was a treaty signed between the victorious British and the defeated Boers.
- It was signed on **3rd May 1902** to end the Second Anglo - Boer War of 1899 - 1902.
- It is also referred to as the 'After war" treaty of 1902.
- **It was signed in the city of Vereeniging south of Johannesburg in the Transvaal Republic.**
- The Boers were represented by their new leaders like General Smuts, Louis Botha and Hertzog while Alfred Milner and Lord Kitchner represented the British.
- **REASONS WHY IT WAS SIGNED:**
- It was signed mainly to end of the Second Anglo - Boer war of 1899 – 1902.
- It was to provide a permanent solution to the long term conflicts between the Boers and the British and hence avoid the re-occurrence of other Anglo-Boer Wars.
- It was to pave way for the draft constitution for South Africa.
- It was to prepare the way for the formation of the Union of South Africa.
- It was to repair or re-construct the economy of South Africa that had been destroyed during the war.
- It was to find a way of having the whites control the economy of South Africa.
- It was to check on the Boer nationalism by the British.
- It aimed at confirming the white superiority in South Africa and thus fix the African problem once and for all.
- It was signed to decide on the issue of citizenship and voting rights in South Africa.
- It was to find a solution over the official language to be used in South Africa.
- It was signed to avoid a possible Boer – German alliance or friendship by the British.
- It was signed to have a common racial policy on the non-whites in South Africa.
- Generally, the treaty aimed at bringing about unity between the Boers and the British.
- **THE TERMS OF THE VEREENIGING PEACE TREATY OF 1902**
- The Boer republics of Transvaal and Orange Free State were to lose their Independence and become British colonies.
- Whereas Transvaal's name was to remain intact, Orange Free State was to become Orange River Colony.
- The British were to release all the Boer prisoners and pardon all those Boers who still possessed fire arms.

- English and Dutch languages were to be given equal status and therefore both were to be used as official languages.
- The Africans were to be stopped from participating in politics and were even denied voting rights.
- The British were to withdraw their troops from the Boer republics.
- The Boers were to end their hostilities against the British.
- The British and Boers were to disarm the Africans in order to protect their political and economic interests.
- The British were to extend 35 million pounds as interest free loans to the Boer Republics to help them recover from poverty.
- The Boers were to stop discriminating and over taxing the British goods and trade was to be made free.
- Britain was to stop protecting African rights and freedom in South Africa. This was an attempt to please the Boers.
- **EFFECTS OF THE VEREENIGING PEACE TREATY OF 1902**
- The only two Boer republics of Transvaal and Orange Free State lost their independence and became British colonies.
- The treaty created a foundation on which the British and Boers built lasting unity between the two white communities in South Africa.
- It placed South Africa in the hands of the whites since they alone were declared as the true citizens of the country.
- The Boers lost Swaziland as it was later declared a British Protectorate in 1902.
- It produced new progressive leaders for the Boers. For example, Louis Botha emerged from Transvaal, Jan Christian Smutts an intelligent lawyer came from the Cape and James Hertzog emerged from Orange Free State.
- It increased Boer nationalism and by 1908, Boer parties like *HetVolk* (the people) were demanding for their Independence both in Transvaal and Orange River Colony.
- The treaty ended by making the British equal to the Boers, hence setting the stage for the white superiority in South Africa.
- The British stopped their policy of protecting African rights in South Africa and they sided with the Boers in persecuting or mistreating the Africans.
- It created peace among the whites and there arose no more Anglo-Boer Wars after the signing of this treaty.
- It laid a foundation for the Union of South Africa which materialized in 1910 since it created friendship between the British and the Boers.
- It created a new chapter in the Anglo-Boer relationship whereby all their differences were to be solved through dialogue, negotiation and as equal partners.
- It destroyed a possible German and Portuguese intrusion or penetration into the South African politics since the Boers could not ally (associate) with any of the two powers.
- The Boers' economy was boosted by the British extension of large sums of money to them. For example, 3 million pounds was extended as compensation for the damages caused and 35 million pounds as interest free developmental loans to help them recover from poverty.

- The whites promoted their languages i.e. English and Dutch at the expense of the local languages.
- The Boers won a great deal of what they had been fighting for. For example, their hostility towards the Africans was now supported by the British.
- The treaty destroyed the old Boer rivalry and actually by 1908 all the Boers from the four white areas were one.
- The treaty laid a foundation for the calling of the National Convention of 1908 which paved way for the union of the all the whites in South Africa.
- It led to the release of the Boer prisoners of war who had been held in concentration camps by the British.
- The Boers were allowed to keep their guns.
- There was disarmament of the Africans by the whites.
- It confirmed the loss of African Independence since the Africans were ignored in the discussions.
- It laid a foundation for the development of the Apartheid policy. This was because it put in place terms to promote the superiority of the whites in South Africa.

- **EFFORTS OR STEPS TOWARDS THE CLOSER UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA**

- Efforts to unite South Africa were boosted after the Second Anglo-Boer War and the signing of the Vereeniging Peace treaty of 1902.
- The first real efforts were seen when a constitutional Assembly known as the National convention was held in 1908 to debate the constitution for the proposed union.

- **THE NATIONAL CONVENTION (CONFERENCE) OF 1908**

- The National Convention was also known as the National Conference of 1908.
- It was a meeting of the Boer and British representatives. It took place in 1908 in Durban the capital city of Natal.
- Representatives came from the four white colonies. Those representing the British came from the Cape Colony and Natal while those of the Boers were from Orange Free State and Transvaal. These were former Boer republicans like Louis Botha, Jan Christian Smuts, Steyn and Dewet.
- Dr. Starr Jameson represented the British in the meeting.
- The Africans were not represented physically but the British claimed to have represented their interests. This shows that in reality it was not a national conference.
- Even the racist white government in Rhodesia (Zimbabwe) sent representatives. The whites from Rhodesia were to act as observers and advisors.
- It took place at Durban in Natal from **12th October to 5th November 1908**. It was a major step towards the union of South Africa.

- **WHY THE NATIONAL CONVENTION OF 1908 WAS CALLED**

- The meeting was called to stop the Anglo-Boer wars and find a lasting solution to the existing enmity. It was therefore to stop the possibility of the outbreak of the Anglo-Boer wars again.

- The delegates met to debate and discuss details of the nature of the proposed union or federation of South Africa.
- It was to pave way for the final reconciliation and unite the Boers and British in South Africa.
- To write or draft a union constitution for the whites.
- To unite the two white communities under one government.
- They wanted to remove economic or trade barriers so as to allow closer economic co-operation.
- To sort out Inter-territory, railway and custom differences which had caused conflicts between the British and the Boers.
- To debate on the nature of the voting rights in South Africa (Franchise) i.e. to decide on who would vote and not.
- To check on the increasing Boer nationalism by the British.
- The possibility of a Boer – German alliance (friendship) worried the British, hence forcing them to meet the Boers at Durban so as to stop that alliance.
- To fix the position of Africans or the treatment of the non-whites and determine their rights.
- To fix or determine the national language.
- To determine the location of the capital city of the union government.
- The role of the Vereeniging treaty of 1902 which brought the Boers and British on a round table paved way for National convention of 1908.
- To clearly define the question of leadership in the union governance.
- To determine the type of government that suited South Africa i.e. between Federalism and unitary system of government.
- To reduce the costs of administration in South Africa.
- To deal with the increasing number of Indians in South Africa.
- To share the mineral wealth between the Boers and British equally.
- To have one common pool of services like roads, hospitals, etc. by the whites.
- To end all the social and political differences between the Boers and the British hindering the union of South Africa.
- The need to prevent any future African attacks against the whites.
- The end of conservative Boer leaders like Paul Kruger and the rise of new leaders like Louis Botha, General Smutts and Dewet who were willing to co-operate with the British.

RESULTS OF THE NATIONAL CONVENTION OR CONFERENCE OF 1908

- It laid a foundation for the union of the Boers and British under one government which was achieved on 31st May 1910.
- It drafted a new constitution for the Union government. The constitution had the following terms;
- A unitary form government was to be adapted.
- The Queen or King of England was to be the overall controller or Head of the Union government.
- The union government was to be headed by the Governor General as the Queen's representative and he was to be appointed by the British.

- The Governor – General was to be helped by an elected Prime Minister. Louis Botha became the first Prime Minister of the new union government.
- The Prime Minister was to be helped by a council of 10 (ten) ministers.
- It proposed one parliament for the Union Government.
- But this parliament was to be divided into two Houses or Chambers i.e. the Upper House or Senate and the Lower House.
- The Upper House members were to stay for 10 years and then be re-elected.
- The Lower House members were to serve for 5 years and then be re-elected.
- The Lower House members were to discuss and make laws in the parliament.
- The Upper House was to approve and pass laws in the parliament.
- Only male whites above 18 years of age were to vote.
- The Africans were not allowed to sit in the Union Parliament.
- They were also not to vote at all especially in Orange Free State and Transvaal.
- Only the rich Africans and those with a certain level of education were allowed to vote especially in Natal and Cape (British areas).
- The Africans were to be second class citizens while the Europeans were to attain first class citizenship.
- Pretoria, the capital city of Transvaal was to be the seat for Prime Minister or Executive. It was therefore to become the Executive capital of the Union Government.
- The Cape was to be the parliamentary city or capital.
- One Supreme Court for the Union was established at Bloemfontein in Orange Free State. It was therefore to become the judicial capital of the Union government.
- The four white states (colonies) were to become provinces of the Union of South Africa and they stopped to be called colonies.
- But each province was to cater for its own social and economic needs like health and education.
- Each province was to be governed by a Union administrator appointed by the Union Government.
- Orange River colony became Orange Free State.
- There was to be equality among the white races in South Africa.
- Both the British and the Boers were to forgive each other for their past mistakes or blunders.
- The English and Dutch languages were to be of equal status or official languages.
- Provisions were made in future to include the British Northern territories of Rhodesia (Zimbabwe and Zambia), Botswana (Bechuanaland) and Lesotho (Basuto land) in the union.
- It ended the long term enmity between the Boers and the British and the two former enemies became friends for the first time.
- It laid a foundation for Apartheid in South Africa and the mistreatment of Africans.
- It led to the misery and suffering among Africans.
- It increased poverty among Africans.
- As a result of the convention, the whites dominated the politics of South Africa.

- It led to the rise of African nationalism as the Africans rose up to demand for their rights which they had lost in the National convention of 1908.
- **THE SOUTH AFRICAN ACT OF UNION OF 1910 OR THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA:**
- The Act of Union was a constitution or document that was signed in 1910 to bring together the four white states or colonies of Orange Free State, Transvaal, Natal and the Cape Colony under one government. This government came to be known as **the Union of South Africa**.
- This constitution was drafted in the **1908 National Convention** that was held in Durban.
- It was passed in the British parliament into an Act on **20th September, 1909**.
- **On 31st May, 1910**, the constitution or government started working officially with Louis Botha and Jan Christian Smuts as the leaders.
- **REASONS WHY THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA WAS FORMED IN 1910**
- **Question: Why did the whites in South Africa unite in 1910?**
- **Question: Why was the Act of Union signed in 1910?**
- It was to end the long term hostility or enmity between the Boers and the British since the days of the British occupation of South Africa and the Great Trek.
- The need to end the Anglo-Boer wars in South Africa led to the formation of the Union of South Africa.
- To provide permanent solution to the root causes of the social economic and political problems in South Africa.
- It was a move towards reconciliation and unity.
- It was to settle the issue of the voting rights in South Africa.
- It was to settle the issue of the National language of South Africa.
- It was to settle the leadership problem in South Africa between the Boers and British.
- It was to settle or fix the nature of government to be adopted by South Africa.
- The huge sums of money given to the Boers as compensation after the Second Anglo-Boer War persuaded them to unite with the British in 1910.
- The formation of common railway services for the whites also led to the formation of the union.
- The British wanted to destroy the Boer independence or nationalism by bringing the Boers under their firm control.
- The Boers wanted to preserve their economic and political achievements or independence. They realized that isolation from the British would destroy their achievements.
- The granting of independence to the Boers of Orange Free State and Transvaal by the British in 1908 promoted friendship and therefore assured the Boers equality in the new Union.
- The British wanted to prevent the Germans and the Portuguese from taking over the Boer Republic of Transvaal.
- The signing of the **Vereeniging Peace Treaty** in 1902 paved way for the union since it put the white states under one administration.

- The need to avoid unnecessary competition between the British and Boers especially in the field of trade and commerce led to the Union of South Africa in 1910.
- The whites wanted to avoid the duplication of services.
- They wanted to stop the rising trend or spirit of African nationalism. There was a fear that the Africans would unite and throw the whites out of South Africa.
- The need to lower the administrative costs in the white areas led to the creation of one administration in 1910.
- The formation of a **Customs Union** between the British and Boers in **1903** led to the closer co-operation between the two white communities which led to a political union in 1910.
- The calling of the 1908 **National Convention or Conference** in **Durban** cleared the way for the formation of a Union in 1910. This meeting debated, discussed and drafted the union.
- The need to develop a common racial policy towards the Africans made the whites to unite in 1910.
- The death or disappearance of the war-monger leaders from the South African scene like Cecil Rhodes in 1904 and Paul Kruger in 1902 led to the formation of the union.
- The appearance of new leaders on the South African political scene like Hertzog, Jan Christian Smuts and Louis Botha who were willing to co-operate with the British led to the formation of the Union of South Africa.
- The need to contain the rising number of Indians who had even started making political and economic demands made the whites to unite in 1910.
- The role played by the British personalities like **Sir George Grey** and **Selbourne** (the British High Commissioner to South Africa). They very much wanted the union of the white states in South Africa.
- The change in leadership in Great Britain i.e. the **Labour Party** that had come to power was liberal and therefore ready to change the British attitude towards the Boers led to the Union of South Africa.
- In conclusion, the Act of Union was mainly signed to settle the political, economic and social challenges affecting the whites' unity and peace in South Africa.
- **PROBLEMS THAT HINDERED THE UNION BEFORE 1910**
- The Boers never wanted to lose their independence.
- There were conflicts over the national language to be used until when both English and Dutch were adopted as equal languages.
- There were conflicts over the location of the Union Capital City.
- The commercial or economic competition between the two groups could not bring about a peaceful union.
- The British always wanted to dominate the union which scared the Boers.
- The two groups had also failed to resolve the issue of the voting rights in South Africa.
- Both groups feared to shoulder the financial burden of maintaining a bigger administrative structure in form of a union.

- The Boers were proud people who believed that their race was pure and therefore they wanted to maintain their racial purity.
- The growing strength of Boer Nationalism delayed the Union between the two groups.
- The presence of hard-line or *conservative* Boer leaders like Paul Kruger and Joubert who were not willing to co-operate with the British.
- The British leaders like Carnarvon who promoted the earlier Union attempts were arrogant and not good leaders like Selbourne.
- The 1852 Sand River and 1854 Bloemfontein Conventions or treaties that granted independence to the Boers also made the Boers arrogant or proud and therefore hindered unity.
- The British annexation of the Boer republic of Transvaal in 1877 annoyed the Boers and therefore made them to reject the union.
- The first Anglo Boer war of 1880-1881 increased enmity between the two groups, hence making union impossible.
- The aggressive nature of Cecil Rhodes against the Boers i.e. he wanted the whole of South Africa to be under the British control which scared Boers.
- The Jameson Raid of 1895 further worsened the Anglo Boer relations.
- At first the British government in London never supported the Union and it instead recalled George Grey who was the first advocate of the federation.
- The constant wars between the whites and the Africans especially between Mosheshe and the Boers diverted the Boers away from the union.
- The long term hatred between the two white communities since the days of the Great Trek could not bring about a closer union.
- The British protection of the Africans also annoyed the Boers hence hindering unity between the two groups.
- **TERMS OF THE ACT OF UNION:**
- ***What was decided upon in the South African Act of Union in 1910?***
- ***What were the major terms of 1910 Act of Union?***
- The terms of the Union were in the fields of leadership, voting, language, position of the non-whites, distribution of towns as well as the status of South Africa's neighbours.
- **Terms regarding leadership or Government**
- A unitary form of government was to be adopted.
- The Queen or King of England was to be the overall controller or Head of the government.
- The union government was to be headed by the Governor General as the Queen's representative and he was to be appointed by the British.
- A Prime Minister was to help the Governor General.
- A council of 10 (ten) ministers was to assist the Prime Minister.
- **Terms regarding the Parliament**
- A Union parliament was to be adopted.
- The union parliament was to be divided into two bodies i.e. the Lower House and the Upper House.

- The Lower House members were to serve for five years and then be re-elected.
- The Upper House also known as senate was to serve for ten years and then be re-elected.
- The Lower House members were to discuss and make laws in the parliament.
- The Upper House was to approve and pass laws in the parliament.
- **Terms regarding the position of states and towns**
- The four former white states were to become provinces of South Africa and they stopped to be called colonies.
- Each Province was to cater for its social and economic needs like health, power and education.
- Each province was to be governed by a union administrator appointed by the Union government.
- Orange River colony which was colonized by the British after the second Anglo-Boer war was renamed Orange Free State and its capital Bloemfontein was to be the judicial capital of the Union government.
- Cape Town was to be the Parliamentary or Legislative Headquarters of the Union Government.
- Pretoria was to become the Executive capital or Presidential seat of the union Government.
- **Terms regarding the position of the Africans**
- The African position and status in South Africa was to be lowered and therefore they became second class citizens.
- A white missionary was to be nominated to represent the Africans.
- Only rich and educated Africans living in the British Cape and Natal provinces were to vote or be voted for.
- The British were to remain responsible for Basutoland, Swaziland and Botswana.
- There was to be a Supreme Court (*overall court*) for the union government (for *the whole country*) with provincial or district courts.
- The Africans were not to sit in the union parliament because it was restricted to only the whites.
- The Africans living in the Boer controlled areas were not to vote or to be voted for or therefore they were disfranchised.
- The African interests and rights were to be ignored in the New South Africa.
- **Terms regarding equality and language**
- There was to be equality among the white races.
- Both the British and the Boers were to forgive each other for their past mistakes or blunders.
- The English and Dutch languages were to be of equal status or official languages.
- Conclusively, the terms were intended to define the new status quo in South Africa.
- **EFFECTS OF THE UNION OF SOUTH AFRICA (THE ACT OF UNION OF 1910)**
- It united all the white states of South Africa under one administration.
- It restored peace in South Africa after many years of Anglo-Boer conflicts since the days of the Great Trek.
- It promoted the position of the whites in South Africa at the expense of the Africans.

- The Africans were put in an inferior position in relation to the whites i.e. they became second class citizens.
- English and Dutch languages become the official languages in South Africa.
- There was loss of land by the Africans to the whites. This was through Land Act of 1913 and Labour Act of 1911 which was passed after the union.
- The Africans were pushed into reserves known as Bantustans after losing their land to the whites.
- The Africans were no longer protected by the British i.e. the British gave up their policy of protecting the Africans rights and freedom in South Africa.
- It resulted into the creation of Apartheid policy in 1948 with all its bad practices.
- It confirmed the loss of independence by the Africans like they were denied the voting rights.
- It led to the growth of shanty towns and slums like Soweto in which the Africans became very poor, underdeveloped and backward, hence leading poor standards of living.
- The Africans resources especially minerals were fully exploited by the whites.
- The African labourers were cheaply employed by the whites.
- It promoted the economy of South Africa by abolishing trade restrictions across the borders of the four provinces.
- It led to rise of African Nationalism. For example, in 1912 the African National Congress (*ANC*) was formed to fight for the African rights and independence.
- It led to the establishment of the most powerful country (*South Africa*) on the African continent.
- The whites came to dominate the economy of South Africa especially after taking over the African land and minerals.
- Many Africans were killed as they organized mass protests against the whites for example at Soweto in 1976 - 1977.
- **THE APARTHEID POLICY IN SOUTH AFRICA (1948 -1994)**
- ***What is Apartheid Policy?***
- Apartheid was an ***Afrikaner*** or ***Boer*** word meaning separateness or discrimination or apartness of races or people.
- It also meant separate development of the whites and non-whites in all affairs in South Africa.
- It started as a policy of racial discrimination since the days of the *Great Trek*.
- The policy was built over a long period of time.
- It was the Boers' favourite political policy.
- The policy was later designed and forwarded by the Afrikaner university professors and supported by establishing laws.
- The law to establish Apartheid was officially passed in 1948.
- In fact as early as 1960 all laws in South Africa had been changed to be in line with this policy.
- It was practiced in schools, beaches, bus-parks and hotels among others.
- It was officially started by **Daniel Malan**, the Prime Minister of South Africa in 1948

- The policy gave the Whites an upper hand in the running of the affairs of South Africa.
- It was characterized by the creation of separate home lands for the natives called Bantustans.
- The policy was mainly developed out of the Boers policy of **racial prejudice**.
- **AIMS OF APARTHEID OR WHY THE APARTHEID POLICY WAS INTRODUCED IN 1948**
- The whites feared being dominated by the Africans who were the majority in South Africa. Therefore, they wanted to maintain white domination of South Africa affairs.
- The influence of the Dutch Reformed Church (DRC) which preached Boer superiority over other races led to the introduction of Apartheid in South Africa.
- The Boers believed that they were a God chosen race they wanted to maintain white racial segregation.
- The whites wanted to suppress African rights and freedom as well as the Indians and coloureds living in South African
- They wanted to promote separate development of the Africans and whites.
- To separate the two races i.e. the whites and black and avoid any mixing.
- The whites wanted to promote white enslavement of the Africans for example through denying them good education.
- To isolate the Africans for the benefit of the whites i.e. the Africans would live in the Bantustans or reserve areas.
- They wanted to weaken African Nationalism and threats i.e. to crash the likely African rebellion.
- It was to ensure social discrimination in education, health and other social services.
- It was to isolate Africans from participating in the national politics of South Africa for example by removing voting rights from them.
- It was to disarm the Africans completely and make them defenseless.
- They wanted to prevent criticism from the outside world especially through giving Africans independence in the Bantustans.
- They wanted to get cheap labour by putting the Africans into reserves.
- It was to implement the terms of the Act of Union of 1910 which placed South African under the majority whites.
- They wanted to pretend that the Africans were citizens of separate states i.e. to deceive the Africans that they were independent.
- To make the Africans poor and backward after putting all the economic resources in the hands of the whites.
- They wanted to restrict African movement through setting up the pass system which limited the movement of the Africans from one area to another.
- They wanted to keep the Africans in South African inferior.
- They wanted to deny the Africans ownership of the economic resources like minerals.
- The whites wanted to exploit the minerals and other resources in South Africa.
- They wanted to divide and rule the Africans through the establishment of Bantustans along tribal lines.

- They wanted to avoid competition between the Africans and whites over employment opportunities or jobs.
- It was because of the misinterpretation of the Bible by the Boers especially the story of Noah and his three sons in the Old Testament.
- **HOW APARTHEID WAS APPLIED IN SOUTH AFRICA**
- Apartheid was applied or practiced through establishing a number of Laws or Acts. It was practiced in the fields of Politics, Education, Land, Employment and other Social aspects.
- ***POLITICS***
- The Africans were removed from the common voter's register by the Native Act of 1936.
- The Africans in the Cape Province were to elect three white representatives in the House of Assembly on a separate voter's register.
- The Africans throughout South Africa were to elect four Europeans to represent them in the Senate.
- The coloured people were also removed from the common voter's register and were put on a separate one.
- The Africans who tried to resist racial discrimination were arrested and imprisoned.
- The African political parties like the African National Congress (ANC) and the Pan-African Congress (PAC) were banned from operation.
- Any publication like Newspapers suspected for supporting the African nationalists was banned.
- Later African representation in the South African parliament was abolished.
- The whites passed an Act that authorized local magistrates to ban any gathering of two or more people for forty eight hours.
- African political organizations were stopped from receiving financial assistance from abroad.
- There was continuous arrest of people without fair trial.
- It was illegal for the Africans to complain and report about the prison conditions and for the prisoners to communicate with anyone.
- ***EDUCATION***
- The Bantu Education Act of 1953 and the Extension of Universities Education Act of 1959 defined the education to be offered to the Africans.
- By these Acts, the Africans and coloureds had to go to separate schools from those of the whites.
- The Africans were given inferior type of education to keep them in an inferior position in society.
- Academic and professional training like banking was not given to the Africans.
- The Africans were mainly given agricultural lessons to equip them for survival.
- The Africans were given an inferior curriculum and examinations.
- The African education was conducted in local languages or mother languages.
- African languages and sometimes the English Language were also used to prepare them for a simple conversation with the Europeans.

- African education was removed from the missionary control and put under government control.
- As a result, the government decided who to be taught, who to teach and what to teach.
- Higher education for Africans was discouraged. They also studied local issues rather than national issues.
- The Africans were put in congested classes and given inferior teachers.
- African education was poorly funded and the teachers were poorly paid.
- There were different universities for the different races following the Extension of Universities Education Act of 1959. For example, the Xhosa students were to study in Fort Hare University, the Zulu in Ngoye University, the Sotho in Turf loop, the coloureds in Belle-Ville and the Indians in West Ville University.
- **EMPLOYMENT:**
- There was enslavement of the Africans and making them a source of cheap labour.
- Skilled employment was reserved for the Europeans while the heavy and unskilled work was reserved for the Africans like chopping of wood, digging in the mines and drawing water.
- The Africans were paid low or no wages for their heavy work.
- The **Mines and Workers' Act of 1911** denied Africans employment as skilled workers in the mines.
- The Africans were not to belong to any Trade Union. For example, the Industrial **Conciliation Act of 1937** stopped the Africans from forming Trade Unions.
- The workers were excluded from organized consultation with the employers.
- African workers in towns were put in dirty African townships like Sharpeville, Vereeniging and Soweto.
- Land was divided into two categories i.e the Native and non-native land by the Land Act of 1913.
- Only 13% of the land was given to the Africans (*Natives*) and 87% belonged to the whites.
- Separate homes were created for the Africans. These were known as the Bantustans and they included Transkei, Ciskei, Gazankulu and Kwazulu - Natal.
- The African chiefs were given power over local issues in the Bantustans.
- By 1950, all people in South Africa had to be registered as whites, coloureds and natives.
- Africans were forbidden to live outside their reserves or Bantustans.
- The Africans were only allowed to live away from their reserves when working for the Europeans.
- **SOCIAL AFFAIRS**
- Social laws were passed that segregated Africans in social activities and contacts.
- For example, marriage between the Africans and whites was not allowed by the **Mixed Marriages Act of 1949**.
- Physical love between whites and non-white men and women was also stopped by the **Immorality Act of 1950**.
- All people had to possess an identity card on which their race was written.

- Free movement of Africans was restricted by the pass laws.
- Every African of 15 years and above, whether male or female had to carry a passbook which contained all the permits and registrations like tax receipt and certificate of employment.
- Police officers could demand any of the permits and registrations at all times.
- Africans had to first get permission from their local labour office before seeking for employment in the urban centres.
- The contracted workers in white areas were not supposed to live with their wives and children.
- The Africans who were not employed in the white occupied areas were only allowed to stay for three hours.
- The Africans had to get a permit to enter an urban area if the visit was to last for over 72 hours.
- It was illegal for the Africans to live in the towns of the whites.
- Even the coloureds and Asians who had shops and property in the white occupied areas were prohibited from using them.
- The Africans were not to share social services like health, roads, railways, schools with the whites.
- ***How was Apartheid practiced in South Africa between 1948 and 1994?***
- **EFFECTS OF THE APARTHEID POLICY**
- ***What were the effects of Apartheid on?***
- ***Africans***
- ***Whites***
- **AFRICANS:**
- The Africans became second class citizens with very poor social facilities.
- It led to violent protests by the Africans which led to the death of many people. For example, in 1960 at Sharpeville sixty two (62) died and over 220 died during Clement Kadali's strikes.
- The Africans were denied economic opportunities which could make them rich.
- It caused great suffering and misery to the Africans.
- The Africans became poor because they lost land and other properties.
- The Africans were made unskilled labourers to do unskilled or manual work.
- It led to the growth of African Nationalism. For example, the South African Native Congress which later became the ANC was formed immediately after the Land Act was passed in 1912.
- It created enmity between the whites and Africans.
- It led to the creation of Bantustans where the Africans suffered from poor conditions of living.
- The Africans were segregated against by the whites in all aspects.
- The pass laws that were put in place made the Africans prisoners in their own country.
- There was loss of land by the Africans through the Land Act of 1913.
- There was a decline in African culture.

- The Africans started migrating to urban areas to look for employment opportunities, hence creating migrant labourers.
- The Africans lived in slum areas like Soweto.
- **WHITES:**
- The whites got a lot of land and became rich.
- The whites exploited African resources like land and minerals.
- The whites became first class citizens who enjoyed first class services.
- The whites got cheap labour from the Africans.
- The whites got skilled and semi-skilled jobs.
- The whites dominated the politics of South Africa like in the parliament.
- It made the Boers to dominate South Africa.
- **THE BANTUSTANS IN SOUTH AFRICA:**
- Bantustans were homes or reserves set up by Whites for the Africans or blacks in South Africa.
- The Bantustans were created in areas like Transkei, Ciskei for the Xhosa, Qwawa and Basotho for the Sotho, Gazankulu for the Tsonga, Baputha for the Tswana, Kwazulu- Natal and Soweto for the Zulu.
- **REASONS FOR THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE BANTUSTANS:**
- They aimed at separating the two races i.e. the Africans and Whites. Therefore, the Africans and whites had to live in separate areas.
- They were set up to promote racism and separate development for the Africans and whites in line with the Apartheid policy.
- The whites wanted to prevent the growth of African Nationalism by dividing them.
- They wanted to “kill” African political understanding in order to promote the white dominance.
- They were formed to promote the land policy of not allowing the Africans to own land. Therefore, through the Bantustans the whites were to ensure that the Africans do not own good land in South Africa.
- They were intended to divert the African attention from the White Government to their local affairs in the reserves and this would reduce African rebellions against the whites.
- They wanted to protect the white property and wealth by isolating the Africans.
- They wanted to protect the white property and wealth by isolating Africans who were their enemies.
- To create a permanent labour supply for the whites by keeping the Africans as slaves in the reserves. Therefore, the Bantustans became labour reserves for the whites.
- They wanted to prevent African contacts with any foreign assistance by isolating and keeping the Africans in the Bantustans.
- To prevent African Unity for a common cause i.e. against the whites. This was because the Bantustans would make it impossible for the Africans from different tribes to meet one another since each tribe was to stay in its own Bantustan.
- They wanted to ensure that South Africa and all her resources were firmly controlled by the whites.

- The Bantustans were to eliminate the problems of under development like slums in the white cities.
- They were set up to create a semi-illiterate class of Africans by denying them higher education in the Bantustans.

- **EFFECTS OF THE BANTUSTANS ON THE AFRICANS**

- The Africans lost their land to the whites as a result of the Bantustans.
- The Africans lost control over their economy which was now dominated by the whites.
- The Africans were sent into camps like Transkei and Kwazulu-Natal where they were enslaved and continued to suffer until 1994.
- The Bantustans limited the movement of the Africans since they had to first get permission or *passbooks* to go out of their areas.
- The Africans suffered from poor living conditions. For example, the reserves were overcrowded, thus leading to the outbreak of diseases.
- They were militarily weakened and they could not easily fight the whites. This was because they could not go out of their reserves to buy guns.
- Racial discrimination increased as the Africans were discriminated against and looked down upon as the lowest and useless class who could only provide cheap labour to the whites.
- It promoted the rise of African Nationalism as the Africans formed political organizations to fight against the policy like the Pan-African Congress (PAC) and Inkatha Freedom Party.
- The Africans became poor since the Bantustans were under developed with no industries and banks.
- The Africans became migrant labourers who moved from place to place and they were paid low wages.
- The Africans were disunited and fought each other. For example, the Inkatha Freedom Party fought against the African National Congress.
- The Africans were killed during their resistances against the policy of the Bantustans like in 1960 at Sharpeville and 1976 to 1977 at Soweto.
- Other Africans were imprisoned or sent into exile as they were reacting towards the policy of Bantustans.

- **EFFECTS ON THE WHITES**

- They dominated the politics of South African.
- The whites got more land after the Africans were stopped from land ownership.
- The whites could easily get cheap labour from these defined areas since the Africans were removed from the whites towns.
- It increased the coming of the African workers to towns which became a threat to the whites.
- The whites preserved their culture from being mixed with Blacks since the Blacks were to stay in their own areas.
- The whites were hated because of mistreating the Africans in the Bantustans.
- It enabled the whites to acquire more wealth and they became richer than any of their brothers in Europe.

- The Bantustans enabled the Apartheid policy to stay in South Africa for long since the African political understanding was reduced especially through denying them education.
- The policy promoted separate development for the blacks and whites which the whites wanted.
- It partly hindered the growth of African nationalism since the mixing of different African tribes was discouraged, hence promoting disunity.
- ***Why were the Bantustans created?***
- ***What effects did the Bantustans have on the Africans and Whites?***
- **AFRICAN RESPONSE TOWARDS APARTHEID:**
- Their response was in different forms. At first they were peaceful.
- The Africans set up political parties against the policy. For example, there was the **Pan African Congress** (PAC) that was formed in **1959** by **Robert Sobukwe**.
- The Africans later abandoned the peaceful demonstrations and became more militant.
- The Africans organized demonstrations like the Sharpeville incident of 1960 and the Soweto uprising of 1976 - 1977.
- The Africans attacked government establishments like bridges, parks, beaches and banks.
- The Africans started mobilizing people nationwide against the racist government.
- By co-operating with other races that were opposed to Apartheid like the Indians and coloureds.
- By emphasizing that South Africa was for the Africans.
- The Africans responded by killing the whites.
- They used acts of sabotage and violence. For example, they formed armed wings like the ***Umkhonto Wesizwe*** or the ***Spear of the Nation*** and the **POQO** of the ANC and PAC respectively which carried out bombings in Cape Town, Transkei and other areas.
- The Africans looked for help from some fellow African States like Egypt, Libya, Tanganyika and Uganda among others.
- ***How did the Africans respond to the Apartheid policy?***
- **DESCRIBE THE ROLE PLAYED BY THE FOLLOWING IN THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN SOUTH AFRICA.**
- **Clement Kadalie**
- He was born in **1896 in Northern Nyasaland (now Malawi)**
- He was educated in Malawi where he became a **primary teacher**.
- He **taught briefly** before seeking employment in the neighbouring countries.
- In early 1915, **he travelled** far and wide to **Mozambique** as well as Rhodesia (**Zimbabwe**) and then South Africa.
- He reached South Africa in 1918 where he **befriended Arthur F. Batty** – a trade unionist and political activist.
- He had spent his early life as a **clerk on a cotton farm in Mozambique and Zimbabwe**.
- As a migrant worker **he was employed in Cape Town in early 1919**.

- He started the **industrial and commercial union**.
- This later became the **Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union** of South Africa.
- The **union protested against the unfair labour laws and called for workers' rights**.
- **He successfully** organized the **dockworkers' strike** which **prevented the export of all goods** through Cape Town harbour.
- **The strike laid the foundation** for Clement's development **into a leader** known to thousands of people in South Africa.
- He became a **leading trade unionist** in South Africa.
- His example **won him many sympathizers to the Trade union that he had formed**.
- He therefore **fits well** in the generation of **Pixley Ka Isaka Seme, Dube and Xuma**.
- He was a **moving and persuasive speaker and** therefore able to **explain the African pressing problems**.
- He **expressed his anger about oppression and exploitation of the blacks**.
- He even **made many blacks** to believe **that change was immediate**.
- He was **considered among Blacks** to be their **immediate liberator or savior**. As a result, the ICWU membership increased e.g. at its peak had between 150,000 and 200,000 members of the ICU.
- Clement Kadalie's **ICU branches were opened up throughout South Africa**.
- He **made prominent politicians like Hertzog and Malan to be polite** to him.
- They **feared that he could turn the Cape Africans and coloured against them**.
- **The Trade Union (ICWU) was the first of its kind thus shook** the whites.
- Not only was it (ICWU) for the workers' rights but **a general protest movement against all forms of oppression**.
- **He fought for the Blacks as well as the coloured rights** in the Cape Town.
- **He mobilized skilled and unskilled workers in a more powerful strong organization**.
- **He fought against injustice** in South Africa.
- **He fought against racial discrimination** against the Blacks.
- He fought against **enslavement** of the Blacks by the whites.
- He fought **against poor housing** conditions in the **mines**
- He was hurt **by the mining accidents** which resulted into the death of many Africans.
- He was not happy with the continued **torture or mistreatment of Blacks** in their places of work.
- **He fought for the improved general welfare** of the Black workers in South Africa.
- He became **so popular at the height of his work**.
- In the 1920s, the ICWU prospered but the leaders found it hard to use it as an instrument to win advantages for African workers.

- Clement Kadalie's activities were soon **challenged internally and externally**.
- His **ICWU began to face leadership, financial, size and harsh law challenges**.
- He went to **Europe to seek advice on Trade Union operations**.
- **A Scottish trade unionist Ballinger was sent to advise him on Trade union methods**.
- The members wanted to see their wages and conditions of work improved but ICWU could not meet that need. So the **members ran away**.
- On 24th November 1924, he was **arrested and issued with a deportation order**.
- **He was blacklisted as an illegal immigrant and required to leave South Africa within three days**.
- **In 1925, he moved the Trade Union headquarters to Johannesburg**.
- In **May 1927**, he represented **the ICWU at the International Labour Conference in Geneva**.
- **His failure to define whether the ICWU was a Trade Union or political organization** let him down.
- **He later broke away from Ballinger**. After the split, the government found it easy to suppress each section separately.
- **The union further collapsed when Harry Champion of Zululand split to form another trade union in Natal**, a predominantly Zulu organization.
- **In 1919 he resigned and was replaced by William Ballinger**.
- **The ICWU** responded to African grievances and provided hope for freedom.
- It greatly influenced the consciousness or development of political understanding of the Black workers in cities, towns as well as up country.
- He **made assurances of liberation and restoration of African land**.
- He **influenced African chiefs like the Swazi chiefs to influence their followers into becoming members** of the ICWU.
- Clement Kadalie helped **to make Blacks** more aware of the **white exploitation**.
- **He successfully united the African workers together** despite their different loyalties.
- His work made him an important figure in the History of Black labour in South Africa. In **conclusion**, despite his death, Clement Kadalie's work left a rich history for future liberation challenges.
- **THE ROLE PLAYED BY PIXLEY KA-ISAKA SEME IN THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN SOUTH AFRICA**
 - He was one of the **earliest** South African nationalists.
 - He was in the generation of John Dube, Solomon Platje, Tenga Tabavu.
 - He was a **Zulu and educated** in Natal and abroad qualifying as a **lawyer**.
 - He **delivered a prize winning address** during his study abroad.
 - At first, he **had a dream of re-building the Zulu Nation**. However, he **abandoned it in favour of African Nationalism** in order to address African problems.
 - He **demonstrated his frustration to the** unfairness in the **white union constitution of 1910**.

- He fought the **exclusion of the blacks** in the **national politics** of South Africa.
- He **called for an African voice in the making of laws**.
- He also **wanted Africans to participate in the administration of South Africa**.
- He strongly **criticized white racial** discrimination against the blacks.
- He called for **racial harmony / equality** for all races in South Africa.
- He **promoted National Unity** among various groups of people in South Africa.
- He also **started the idea of seeking foreign assistance to the pressing challenges in South Africa**.
- He **supported the Ghandism approach** of non-violent means of achieving freedom for all. He thus **discouraged the use of militant means** against racial segregation.
- He **discouraged boycotts and strikes**.
- He **encouraged an understanding between the white government and the Black people**.
- He **fought against the enslavement** of the Blacks.
- He **fought against economic exploitation** of the blacks by the whites.
- He **wrote extensively in his News Paper "ABANT BATHU" or "OUR PEOPLE"** about the **unfairness against the blacks**.
- The **news paper was first established in English**, then later in the other three Bantu languages. However, **the white government later forced his news paper** to close down.
- In 1911, Pixley made as important **pronouncement or statement** in which he urged the **"Africans to forget all their past differences and come together for a common cause"**
- The pronouncement laid a foundation for the **formation of the South African Native National Congress (SANNC)**.
- He teamed up with **Sol Plaatje and Dr. L.J. Dube**, to start **the SANNC** on 8th January, 1912.
- **The SANNC later became** the future ANC.
- **The ANC was later launched in 1923** and later became a National wide party in 1935.
- Its original objectives and aims later became the future national objectives of freedom and **independence**.
- **His mistakes and weaknesses later became future political strategies**. For example, Clement Kadalie formed the ICWU in 1920 after correcting some of the weaknesses of SANNC.
- He **fought the unfair land distribution** in South Africa. For example, He condemned the Land Act of 1913 which left the Africans with only 13 percent (13%).
- During this struggle, he bought land in the Eastern Transvaal and **set up the African Farmers' Association**.
- He thus **encouraged the African farmers to acquire modern farming methods** and buy more farm land.

- He **fought the pass laws** which restricted African movements in South Africa.
- He **was the president of the ANC from 1930-1936**.
- When his strategy of non-violence failed, **a change to the violent approach** of achieving independence was adopted.
- His philosophy of racial harmony and equality led to the formation of the Freedom Charter of 1955.
- His example **provided a ground for the future Nationalists** upon which the ways and means of achieving freedom were adopted. In 1959 for example, Leballo teamed up with Robert Sobukwe to start the PAC, a more radical political party because of the rich legacy he left behind by Isaka Seme.
- Though Seme **died in 1951**, he left a rich foundation upon which future Nationalists built to achieve freedom.
- **Conclusively therefore**, Seme remains one of the leading early Nationalists in South Africa.
- **THE AFRICAN NATIONAL CONGRESS (ANC)**
- This was the largest and well known political organization in South Africa.
- It was formed in **1912** as the **South African Native Congress**.
- Later in **1935**, it was renamed the **African National Congress (ANC)**. The first president of the ANC was **Doctor Xuma**, elected in 1940.
- **AIMS OF THE AFRICAN NATIONAL CONGRESS**
- It was formed to promote mutual understanding among the different races of people in South Africa namely, Africans, the coloureds and the whites.
- It was formed to defend the rights of all the south Africans whose rights as human beings had been violated for example the right to live, associate and to determine their political destiny.
- It was formed to provide a collective mouth piece to the Africans to air out their complaints both at national and international levels.
- It was formed to fight for the independence of the black people in South Africa.
- It was formed to fight for the economic equality of all races in South Africa. The whites had put in place an economic system designed to restrict the blacks and coloureds to the position of a permanently low paid working class which was meant to stay in poverty and overcrowded areas.
- It was formed to destroy white domination in the politics of South Africa by involving the blacks in the politics of their country.
- It was formed to destroy the Apartheid policy in South Africa and put in place a democratic government that would represent the political views of all the races. The Apartheid policy had made the Africans second class citizens in their own country.
- **THE CONTRIBUTION OF THE ANC TO THE LIBERATION STRUGGLE OF SOUTH AFRICA**
- It sensitized the Africans about the importance of independence which inspired them to fight against the Apartheid regime.
- It mobilized and united the various races of people in South Africa like the Blacks, Asians and the coloureds in the struggle for independence.

- It organized scholarships for its youths to study abroad in some African states which cooperated with the blacks against the white regime like Uganda, Mozambique, Tanzania and Tanzania.
- It persuaded the workers in the industries and mines to organize strikes against the Apartheid government.
- It rejected Apartheid, white domination, segregation and called for greater participation of the Africans in commerce and industry.
- In 1955, it issued a **"Freedom Charter"**. This document called up on the whites to give freedom to the Africans.
- It adopted violence in the struggle against Apartheid. In 1961, it formed a military wing known as the ***Umkhonto Wesizwe*** or ***the Spear of the Nation*** which carried out terrorist attacks or violence against the Apartheid regime.
- It cooperated with other nationalist groups in the struggle for independence in South Africa for example the **South African Students Organization (SASO)** of Steve Biko.
- It groomed leaders of the liberation struggle like Oliver Tambo, Albert Lithuli, Nelson Mandela and Walter Sisulu who helped to spear head the liberation struggle.
- It won international support from the Organization of African Unity (OAU) which supported the freedom fighters in South Africa.
- It also won support from the United Nations Organization (UNO) which imposed economic sanctions on the South African government.
- It put pressure on the South African regime to release the political prisoners like Nelson Mandela who eventually led to the liberation of South Africa by 1994.
- It took part in the first multi-racial elections organized in 1994 in which it became victorious and the ANC leader Nelson Mandela became the first black leader.
- **PROBLEMS FACED BY THE ANC**
- The ANC lacked enough funds since the majority of the Africans were very poor.
- Some African countries like Malawi and Zaire refused to support the ANC and instead they supported the Apartheid regime.
- They faced a problem of the arrest and imprisonment of their leaders like Nelson Mandela, Albert Lithuli and Robert Sobukwe.
- Many Africans were killed while rebelling against the Apartheid government. For example, in the Sharpeville Massacre of 1960 over 60 Africans were killed while many others were killed in the Soweto Massacre of 1976.
- Some leaders were forced into exile. For example, Oliver Tambo was exiled to Zambia.
- The ANC lacked strong leaders especially before 1945 who could organize the party better.
- They lacked grass root support before 1945 because majority of the Africans feared the reaction of the whites in case they joined the ANC.
- Some leaders promoted tribal conflicts among the ANC members especially among the Zulu.
- There was disunity within the ANC leadership for example the youth against the old, those who favoured peace against violence. This weakened the party.

- It suffered from problems of backwardness and illiteracy among the Africans.
- Some big powers like USA and Canada supported the whites in South Africa against the Africans.
- The Africans were subjected to many restrictions which made it difficult for the ANC to carry out its planned activities.
- The ANC lacked effective military support to fight against the white regime.
- **NELSON MANDELA**
- Nelson Mandela was born in **Umtata** in Transkei on **18th July 1918**.
- His father **Mgadla Mandela** was principal councilor to the paramount chief of the **Thembu tribe** known as **David Dalindyebo**.
- The many cases that came before the chief's court influenced him to become a lawyer.
- He received his primary education at a local mission school.
- His secondary education was at a Wesleyan mission school in Heold town.
- He later joined Fort Hare University College for a Bachelor of Arts Degree.
- While there, he was a member of the students' representative council.
- When he participated in a students' protest he was suspended.
- He went to Johannesburg where he completed his Bachelor of Arts Degree by correspondence. In Johannesburg, he started studying for his Bachelor of Laws Degree.
- In 1942, he entered politics by joining the ANC.
- At the peak of World War II, he and a small group of youths in ANC met under the leadership of Lembedde.
- The other members included William Nkomo, Walter Sisulu and Oliver Tambo.
- They started with sixty (60) members residing in the Rand.
- The aim of these 60 youths was to turn ANC into a mass political party with support from the peasants, workers and the uneducated of both the rural and urban areas.
- Mandela and these youths emphasized radical nationalism and thus formed the African National Congress Youth League (ANCYL).
- Mandela's hard work led to his election as Secretary General of the Youth League in 1947.
- He was behind the programme of action passed in the 1949 Annual Conference of the ANC which emphasized boycott, strike, civil disobedience and non-cooperation. This was after the victory of the Boer Nationalist Party under Dr. Malan in 1948.
- In 1950, he joined the National Executive Committee of ANC.
- He played an important role in issuing a policy document demanding for equal land distribution, trade union rights, education and culture.
- In 1952, he was elected national volunteer in chief of the ANC Defiance Campaigns against the unfair Apartheid laws. He therefore travelled all over the country organizing resistance to the discriminatory laws.
- As a result of the defiance campaigns, he was charged and convicted of breaking the Suppression of Communism Act and given a suspended prison sentence.
- After the defiance campaigns, he was barred from attending any gathering and confined to Johannesburg for six months.

- It was during this confinement that he concentrated on his law profession and was fully admitted to the profession.
- Earlier the ANC had honored him by electing him to the presidency of both the very influential ANCYL and the Transvaal region of ANC at the end of 1952.
- The above honor enabled him to become the Deputy President of ANC.
- While in his law practice, he helped many people with land problems and those breaking the various Apartheid laws.
- Due to the legal assistance he extended to the poor and helpless Africans, the Apartheid regime chased him away from the town to an area where his clients could not easily reach him. He however went against the law.
- In 1952, he was at the head of formulating a plan to ensure that the ANC remained in contact with the people through organizing public meetings.
- He strongly opposed the Bantu Education Act of 1953.
- In the late 1950s, he turned his attention towards the exploitation of labour, the press laws, the Bantustans policy and the Universities Act of 1959. It was such activities of Nelson Mandela that made him in the 1950s a victim of torture by the Apartheid regime.
- After the Sharpeville demonstration of 1960, Mandela who was still on trial for treason was detained.
- In 1961, the treason trial failed by ANC was banned from operation.
- From then onwards Mandela became the most important figure in ANC leadership since his underground branches became very important in the face of this ban.
- In March 1961, 1,400 delegates met in Pietermaritzburg to map out a future for South Africa and Mandela was the keynote speaker.
- At the conference, he warned the Apartheid regime that unless it involved all in people in the politics of their country, he was going to organize a general strike which he later did.
- He therefore moved all over the country disguising himself on many occasions to avoid being arrested.
- It was this successful dodging of police arrest that got him the name the **Black Pimpernel**.
- In 1961, his friends formed the Spear of the Nation (***Umkhonto Wesizwe***) an armed wing of the ANC of which Nelson Mandela was the commander in chief.
- In 1962, he left the country secretly and attended military training in Algeria and many conferences like the Pan African Congress of 1963 in Ethiopia.
- While out of the country, he arranged for the training of the ANC freedom fighters in friendly countries like Tanganyika.
- When he returned to south Africa, he was charged for unlawfully leaving the country and inciting strikes and therefore he was given five years imprisonment.
- While serving his sentence, he was charged in the Rivonia trial with sabotage.
- He was sentenced for life imprisonment on the notorious Robben Island prison off the Cape Town coast.
- While in prison, he received offers of freedom in exchange of his relaxation against the Apartheid regime but he refused.

- On 11th February 1990, he was released and assumed the Presidency of the ANC in 1991 at the National Conference. When he was released, he suspended the armed struggle.
- In 1993, he accepted the noble prize on behalf of all the South Africans.
- On 10th May 1994, he led the ANC into power following his victory in the first multi-racial elections in South Africa.
- In June 1999, he retired from public life and **he died in 2013.**
- **GOVAN MBEKI, 1910 – 2001**
- **Govan Mbeki Achibald Munyelwa** was born in **1910** in Transkei and attended a mission school for his lower education.
- Later he got a bursary at Fort Hare University where he graduated with a Bachelors of Arts Degree in 1937.
- He joined ANC while a student in 1935 and he became a leading member of this party.
- As an individual, he was a communist politician and a leading member of the South African Communist Party (SACP).
- After completion of his studies, Mbeki taught briefly at Adams College but he was chased because of his political activities.
- He then took up the post of manager of a certain cooperative store and at the same time was the editor of the territorial magazine between 1938 and 1944.
- By 1941, he was a very active member of the *Transkei Voters Association*, a body that campaigned for the return of the Africans on to the common voters' register.
- Because of his outstanding role in the liberation struggle in Transkei, he was voted in 1941 as secretary of the Transkei Voters Association.
- The people of Transkei were so satisfied with his contribution such that in 1943, he was elected to the *Transkei Native Assembly* or Parliament.
- In 1943, he was a leading member in preparing a document known as the African Claims which pointed out the genuine demands of the ANC. These claims were later incorporated into the Freedom Charter of 1955.
- After the destruction of his cooperative store, he shifted to editing a new magazine in Port Elizabeth known as *The New Age* which was a communist paper.
- From 1955, Mbeki came out strongly and declared his support to the liberation struggle in South Africa.
- While at Port Elizabeth he popularized the ANC struggles and actually made Port Elizabeth the centre of ANC activities in the country.
- It was at Port Elizabeth that he came up with the "M" plan which aimed at creating many party branches to increase the spread of nationalistic messages and the organization of the ANC.
- He was elected as the national chairman of ANC in 1956 the same year in which he took over the leadership of the ANC in Eastern Cape.
- As a result of his activities, he was arrested twice in 1960 and 1961 though he was released only to be under house arrest in 1963.
- He went underground after the above incident and he joined the Umkhonto Wesizwe.

- In July 1963, while he was at a secret headquarters of Umkhonto Wesizwe at Rivonia, he was arrested.
- Together with others, they were charged of treason and in 1964 he was sentenced to life imprisonment on the infamous Robben Island.
- His most famous book known as "*The Peasant Revolt*" which highlighted the struggles of the Africans to Apartheid was banned in South Africa after its publication in England in 1964.
- After 24 years in prison, he was released in 1987 with orders that he is restricted to only Port Elizabeth but he continued with his opposition to Apartheid.
- After political liberalization in 1990, Govani Mbeki became a member of the ANC interim leadership committee.
- He groomed his son Mbeki junior who from 1996 became the vice president of Mandela and ANC.
- Govani Mbeki however became a permanent delegate for the Eastern Cape to the national council of provinces.
- In 1999, Mbeki retired from active politics the same year that his son assumed the leadership of South Africa as new president.
- Govani Mbeki died in 2001.
- **WALTER SISULU, 1912 – 2003**
- He was born in 1912 in the district of Transkei to a white father though his mother was black.
- He received his education from a certain Anglican mission school and thereafter resorted to gold mining though later he became a manager of an estate agency.
- In 1944 together with Oliver Tambo and Nelson Mandela, he played a big role in forming the ANC Youth League. This was after 1940 when Walter Sisulu joined the ANC and he became an active member of the party.
- Later he was elected treasurer of the youth league and became one of its key leaders.
- In 1949, he assumed the bigger post of Secretary General of the ANC.
- His anti-Apartheid activities made him an enemy of the government and from 1956 he started facing arrests from the government.
- In 1956 he was charged with treason but was acquitted in 1961.
- After the Sharpeville Massacre of 1960 when the government banned the ANC, Walter Sisulu and others were repeatedly arrested and tortured by the authorities.
- In 1963, because of the persecution of the nationalists by the government, Walter Sisulu went underground.
- In 1963 Walter Sisulu was arrested and was like others charged in the infamous Rivonia trial.
- In order to please the international community, Walter Sisulu was released together with seven other nationalists in October 1989.
- When ANC was allowed to operate again, Walter Sisulu resumed his leadership of ANC.
- In 1991, he was elected deputy president of ANC.
- He died in 2003 after playing a great role in the liberation struggle.

- **STEVE (STEPHEN) BIKO, 1947 – 1977**

- He was born in 1947 in King Williams Town in what is known as the Eastern Cape Province.
- He was one of the militant nationalists who spearheaded many anti-apartheid demonstrations.
- He became very prominent from the late 1960s until 1977 when he became a national hero after being killed in prison.
- As a young man Steve Biko enrolled with the University of Natal in 1966 to study medicine.
- But in 1972, he was expelled from the university because of his involvement in anti-apartheid activities.
- As a nationalist, he targeted the minds of the black Africans because according to him as long as the whites could easily manipulate (confuse) the African minds, liberation was going to be hard to achieve.
- As a result, Steve Biko founded the South African Students' Organisation (SASO) in 1969 as well as the Black Conscious Movement (BCM) in the 1970s.
- He recruited many students into the BCM, leading to a wave of demonstrations by school children and adults.
- By 1976, such student demonstrations had led to the death of some children.
- He was important in opposing the introduction of Afrikaans in the Soweto schools since could lead to the dangerous assimilation of the Blacks.
- Biko became the president of the of the African students' organization, a position which enabled him to form other Black groups opposed to Apartheid.
- The Apartheid regime at first did not see the BCM and other African organizations as a threat to it, but their anti-Apartheid activities started attracting punitive measures from the 1970s.
- Consequently, by 1973 Biko had been banned from many public activities and arrested several times.
- In August 1977, he was arrested again after many serious students' demonstrations which had caused more deaths.
- He was imprisoned by the white police men who severely beat him up leading to his death in police custody.

- **OLIVER TAMBO, 1917 – 1993**

- Oliver Tambo was born in 1917 in Transkei.
- He was educated in mission schools (1924 – 1937) and Fort Hare University (1938 – 1941) where he graduated with a Bachelor of Science Degree.
- He joined the ANC in 1944 and together with Nelson Mandela and Walter Sisulu founded the ANC Youth League.
- At this time, most of his political activities against the whites were conducted from Johannesburg, where he was a teacher of St.Peters' Secondary School.
- In 1955, Oliver Tambo became the Secretary General of the ANC and later in 1958, the ANC Deputy President to Albert Lithuli.
- In 1956, he was arrested over charges of treason but only to be released in 1957, because of lack of enough evidence.

- After the Sharpeville killings of March 1960, the ANC was declared an illegal organization and therefore, Oliver Tambo fled to exile in Zambia.
- While in Zambia, Oliver Tambo became acting President of the ANC after the death of Albert Lithuli and later became full President.
- He published some anti-Apartheid books like "*Oliver Tambo Speaks: Preparing for Power*", which was published in 1988.
- In 1989, he suffered a stroke but continued to hold the ANC presidency till Mandela's release in early 1990.
- In 1993, Oliver Tambo passed away.
- **ROBERT MONGALISO SOBUKWE AND HIS PAN-AFRICAN CONGRESS (PAC)**
- Robert Sobukwe was born in 1924.
- He was educated at Lovedale Mission School and Fort Hare University College.
- While studying at Fort Hare University College, he became politically active as the Secretary-General of the ANC Youth League.
- He later taught at the University of Witwatersrand as a language teacher.
- He later resigned his teaching post to edit a newspaper known as "*The Africanist*" for two years. This paper was against the Apartheid government.
- In 1959, he broke away from the ANC and formed the Pan-African Congress (PAC) which organized a number of demonstrations against the Pass Laws.
- On the day of the Sharpeville massacres, March 21, 1960, Robert Sobukwe was arrested and sentenced to three years in jail, followed by six years in prison on Robben Island.
- After his release in 1969, he was subjected to the Banning Order which placed him under house arrest for life.
- Despite this he managed to qualify as a lawyer in 1975 and practiced law until his death in 1978.
- **THE SHARPEVILLE DEMONSTRATION OF 1960**
- This demonstration is also popularly known as the anti-pass protest of 1960 or the Sharpeville incident of 1960 or the Sharpeville shooting or Massacre of 1960.
- It took place on **Monday 21st March 1960** in the black township of Sharpeville near Vereeniging city in Transvaal.
- It occurred during the Apartheid regime led by **Dr. Verwoerd** who was the Prime Minister.
- The protest was led by **Robert Sobukwe**, the leader of the **Pan African Congress (PAC)**, a political party that he had formed in 1959.
- However, both the members of the African National Congress (ANC) and the Pan African Congress (PAC) were involved in this demonstration.
- It started when the demonstrators moved towards the police station of Sharpeville, a black township near Johannesburg in Transvaal and offered themselves for arrest. Others moved to the police station at Langa in the Cape Town.
- The demonstrators were protesting the establishment of the Pass Laws which restricted the movement of the non-whites.
- The African protestors were peaceful (non-violent). However, the Sharpeville police led by **Lieutenant Colonel Piennar** and **Major Van Zyl** panicked and ordered the

shooting. This is when some protestors stoned Piennar's car. As a result, over sixty (60) innocent people died.

- **CAUSES OF THE 1960 SHARPEVILLE DEMONSTRATION**

- The immediate cause was the introduction of the Pass Laws. The laws required all the black men and women to carry reference books containing their personal details including name, tax code and employer details. The Africans refused to carry these pass books and instead they destroyed them by tearing and burning them. This was because these passes restricted their freedom of movement in the white areas which denied the Africans chance to get better employment.
- The passes also kept the Africans in the poor Bantustans which also annoyed them.
- The pass laws also made the Africans second class citizens in their own country which forced them to stage a demonstration.
- The poor housing conditions in Sharpeville town caused the protest. For example, several African families would be made to stay in a two roomed house meant for one family.
- The high cost of living in Sharpeville town caused the protest. For example, there was an increase of the house rent in Sharpeville with no corresponding increase in wages.
- To make matters worse, some workers like the brick layers had their wages reduced which increased their suffering.
- The need for independence by the Africans from the Apartheid made them to stage a protest in Sharpeville in 1960.
- The unfair education laws like the Bantu Education Act of 1953 as well as the Extension of Universities Education Act of 1959 which denied good education to the Africans annoyed them, hence forcing them to stage a protest.
- The unfair labour laws which encouraged the enslavement of the Africans through forced labour also caused the Sharpeville protest of 1960.
- The lack of good social services like schools, hospitals and recreation centres by the Africans in Sharpeville town also caused the protest.
- The protest was also a reaction against the torture (mistreatment) and detention (imprisonment) without trial of the Africans by the Apartheid regime.
- The grabbing of the African land by the whites in South Africa also made the Africans to organize the protest in 1960.
- The role of the South African nationalists caused the protest. For example, Robert Sobukwe mobilized the Africans in Sharpeville town to rise up against the Apartheid regime.
- The need to publicize the bad leadership in South Africa (the Apartheid regime) to the international community (outside world) made the Africans to stage the Sharpeville demonstration of 1960.
- The protest was inspired by the successful protest of the **women** of Orange Free State that had been staged in **1920** against the injustices of the whites against the Africans.
- The rampant killing of the Africans by the Apartheid regime also made the Africans to stage the Sharpeville protest of 1960.

- It was also inspired by the **1952 Defiance Campaign** which called up on the Africans to go against the Apartheid policies in South Africa through trade boycotts, demonstrations and other forms of non-cooperation with the Apartheid regime.
- The rise of militarism (violence) among the South African youths after the failure of peace in delivering change in South Africa inspired them to stage the pass protest of 1960 in Sharpeville town.
- Generally, the protest was majorly a reaction against Apartheid policy in South Africa.
- **EFFECTS OF THE 1960 SHARPEVILLE PROTEST**
- Some protestors threw stones at the policemen, one of which hit Piennar's car. This caused the police to panic and shot at the protestors.
- It led to the death of the Africans. Sixty nine (69) people were registered dead in Sharpeville town.
- In addition, over 180 Africans were wounded or injured during the protest.
- The demonstrators were defeated and dispersed by the police.
- The ring leaders of the protest were arrested and imprisoned. For example, Robert Sobukwe was sentenced to three years in prison.
- A state of emergency was declared in South Africa. During this period, the Apartheid regime limited the political activities by the Africans like demonstrations as well as political rallies.
- The African political parties like the African National Congress (ANC) and the Pan African Congress (PAC) were banned (abolished) for staging this protest.
- It made the Africans in South Africa to become more **militant** in fighting for their freedom. For example, the two armed wings of ANC and PAC i.e. the **Umkhonto Wesizwe** and the **POQO** respectively were formed which carried out bombing against government facilities like banks, bridges and beaches among others.
- It exposed the brutality of the Apartheid regime. This helped the Africans to attract international sympathy towards their liberation struggle.
- For example, the United Nations Organization (UNO) condemned the massacre and even went ahead to set aside **21st March** every year as an international day to eliminate racial discrimination in the world.
- It increased the African opposition against the whites i.e. the Africans increased their **Defiance Campaign** against the whites in South Africa.
- It increased the mistreatment of the Africans by the whites. This therefore increased their misery and suffering.
- It made the ANC and PAC to bury their differences and work together so as to defeat the Apartheid regime in South Africa. It therefore promoted unity among the Africans.
- There was increased insecurity or violence in South Africa as more protests broke out in the country after the Sharpeville Massacre of 1960. For example, there was the Soweto uprising of 1976.
- It forced some African nationalists to go to exile to avoid being arrested and imprisoned by the Apartheid regime.
- It increased the hatred between the whites and Africans in South Africa.

- It led to the passing of the second **General Law Amendment Act of 1st May 1960** which gave power to the authorities to continue detaining persons after they had served their sentences.
- For example, after serving his sentence Robert Sobukwe was not released on **1st May 1963** as it was supposed to be but he was detained on **Robben Island** and his detention was renewed every year until 1969 when he was put under house arrest.
- The passes were suspended or abolished for some time by the Apartheid regime but later restored.
- A day of national mourning for those who were massacred was declared on **28th March 1960**.
- It increased the brutality of the white regime towards the Africans and many of them were killed.
- It increased poverty among the Africans as many of them refused to go and work for the whites.
- The protest forced some investors especially from Britain to withdraw their money and businesses from South Africa. This weakened the Apartheid regime economically.
- Many protestors tore (destroyed) and burnt their pass books during the protest.
- A lot of property like houses and government facilities in Sharpeville town were destroyed during the demonstration.
- **THE SOWETO UPRISINGS, 1976**
- On **16th of June 1976**, the dirty African town of Soweto, located South West of the rich Johannesburg, exploded into a number of uprisings (demonstrations) against the apartheid regime.
- The uprisings were against the government of Prime Minister **John Vorster**.
- The demonstrations were started mainly by African students led by the 19 year old boy **Mashinini** though the coloureds, industrial workers and other people joined the demonstrations.
- The demonstrations were a reaction against the introduction of **Afrikaans** by the Apartheid regime as a medium of instruction in the Black schools.
- They started when pupils of **Orlando West Junior Secondary School** started rioting or demonstrating.
- It was South Africa's bloodiest racial uprising.
- The demonstrations soon spread to other towns like the Cape Town, East London and Port Elizabeth.
- They went on up to September 1976.
- **CAUSES OF THE SOWETO UPRISINGS OF 1976**
- The immediate cause was the introduction of the **Afrikaans language** as a medium of instruction in African schools. In 1974, the Apartheid government issued a decree (law) that Afrikaans would be the language of instruction in all schools. The decree forced teachers to teach all subjects in Afrikaans. The students strongly refused to be taught in Afrikaans because it was the language of the "oppressor". They therefore decided to express their anger by demonstrating in 1976.

- The students also opposed the Bantu Education Act of 1953 as well as the Universities Extension Act of 1959 which had the following injustices;
- The Bantu Education Act of 1953 emphasized that equality will not be extended to the African students.
- It also emphasized imparting of the lowest technical and academic skills on to the Africans. This annoyed the Africans because it would deny the Africans better jobs.
- The missionaries were also expelled from the African education which denied the Africans chance to get educated.
- The law left the whites with the power to decide and control the direction of African education i.e. the whites who hated the Africans were to decide who to study, select the teachers and even the content to be taught. This annoyed the Africans.
- It also emphasized the use of Bantu or local languages not English. This annoyed the Africans because it would keep them backward forever.
- The above also increased the divisions among the Africans which further annoyed them.
- It also reduced funding for African education which annoyed the Africans. For example, while the whites spent one hundred pounds on each white student, only six and half pounds were spent on an African student.
- Even the classes were very congested with a very poor student-teacher ratio of 72:1 by 1968.
- The 1959 Universities Act, which created separate black universities with poor facilities, annoyed the Africans.
- Such education acts were making the Africans second class citizens in their own country, hence forcing them to organize the Soweto uprising of 1976.
- The poor conditions of living in Soweto town gave rise to gangs of tough children and adults who could not fear death. For example, 1.5 million people lived in houses meant for only 600,000 people. In addition, most of these houses had no electricity and running water.
- The students and other Africans were annoyed by other inhuman apartheid policies which included;
- Forcing them to use passes or pass books.
- Making them poor, yet the whites were accumulating a lot of wealth.
- The apartheid laws had made peaceful changes impossible, hence forcing the Africans to resort to demonstrations.
- The Africans hated their enslavement by the whites.
- They were treated as an equal to the whites.
- The brutal or harsh government reaction to the initial demonstrations like the one at Sharpeville in 1960 made the Africans more violent, hence causing the Soweto uprising of 1976.
- The role of the ***Black Conscious Movement*** (BCM) and its leader **Steve Biko** who called up on the Africans to rise up caused the Soweto demonstration of 1976.
- The visit of ***Henry Kissinger***, the American Secretary of State to South Africa in September 1976 caused more riots since the Americans had done nothing to help the Africans against the whites.

- Unemployment in Soweto Township among the Africans forced them to rise up in 1976.
- The influence of Bishop Desmond Tutu caused the demonstration. He condemned the 1974 Education and Language Decree which introduced Afrikaans in African schools. This encouraged the Africans to rise up against the decree (law) in 1976.
- The oratory or good speaking skills of the 19 year old ***Mashinini***, the leader of the demonstration encouraged the African students to rise up in Soweto in 1976.
- The independence of Angola and Mozambique from Portuguese colonial rule in 1975 encouraged the Africans students in Soweto to rise up against the white injustices in South Africa in 1976.
- **EFFECTS OF THE SOWETO UPRISINGS OF 1976**
- The urban councils which were restricting African rights were replaced by the community councils which gave the Africans more powers in managing their affairs.
- The responsibility of controlling the black schools was shifted to the community schools, not the whites.
- Yearly anniversaries to remember the dead were to be conducted every July of the year. Up to the present today, 16th July is remembered all over Africa as the day of the African Child.
- Apartheid based schools were attacked and destroyed by the Africans.
- Black trade unions were formed by the African workers in Eastern Cape.
- Close 200 people were killed, including Hector Patterson who was only 13 years at the time of his killing.
- Over one thousand people were injured during the demonstration.
- Over 500 students demonstrated against the visit of USA Secretary of State Henry Kissinger to South Africa in September 1976.
- The Africans staged a sit down strike to remember the dead.
- The Minister of Defence was given powers in 1977, to declare a state of emergency for three months.
- In October 1977, the government banned 13 anti-apartheid groups and two black newspapers accused of inciting the students into demonstrations. These were ***"The World"*** and ***"The Weekend World"***.
- It led to the arrest and subsequent murder of Steve Biko and his Black Conscious Movement (BCM) was also banned.
- Even the whites who were supporting Africans were not spared by the violence of the Africans.
- It made some whites to start supporting the Africans. E.g. over 300 white students from the Witwatersrand University demonstrated against the police brutality in Soweto.
- It made the OAU to strongly condemn the Apartheid regime and also increased its support against it.
- It also made the Frontline states to increase their fight against the Apartheid regime.
- It also made the UNO to condemn the Apartheid regime in South Africa.

- The demand to overthrow Apartheid became widespread and slogans like “down with Vorster”, “Let Vorster study Zulu” were heard more often.
- After the uprising, the peaceful protests were abandoned and therefore violence was adopted in the struggle against Apartheid. For example, many youths were smuggled out of South Africa for military training abroad.
- Riots spread all over the country for example in Port Elizabeth, Cape Town, etc.
- Films to popularize the African suffering were acted to honour the dead for example “**Sarafina**”.
- **THE ROLE OF THE ORGANIZATION OF AFRICAN UNITY (OAU) IN THE LIBERATION OF SOUTH AFRICA:**
 - The Organization of African Unity (OAU) was formed in 1963 in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. One of its objectives was to fight against Apartheid in South Africa and therefore it played a major role in the liberation of South Africa as noted below;
 - It recognized political parties in South Africa like ANC and PAC. This gave the Africans morale to fight against the Apartheid regime.
 - It put pressure on the European countries like France and Britain to stop supporting the racist government in South Africa.
 - It established a **Liberation Committee** in 1974 based in Dar-es-salaam, Tanzania. This committee looked for military and financial assistance that was in turn extended to the Blacks in South Africa.
 - It formed the **Frontline states** that were very instrumental in the liberation of South Africa.
 - It imposed economic sanctions on the South African government which weakened her economic stand by 1994.
 - Its member states gave asylum or refugee to the South Africans who were persecuted or mistreated by the Apartheid regime. For example, **Oliver Tambo** was hosted by Zambia while many others were hosted in Uganda, Libya and Egypt among others.
 - OAU member states trained the South African rebels who later launched attacks against the Apartheid regime.
 - OAU member states gave scholarships to the South Africans to study. Most of these had been expelled from the South African schools by the Apartheid regime.
 - OAU put pressure on the South African government to change the harsh Apartheid laws.
 - It demanded for the release of the political prisoners like Nelson Mandela, Walter Sisulu and Oliver Tambo among others.
 - It co-operated with the United Nations Organization (UNO) in the struggle against Apartheid. For example, it appealed to the UNO for moral and physical support which was extended to the Africans in their struggle for independence.
 - The OAU member states contributed money to support the struggle for independence in South Africa. The OAU asked the member states to set aside 1% of their national budgets for the liberation of South Africa from Apartheid rule.
 - It isolated all countries that co-operated with South Africa especially in Africa like Malawi under Kamuzu Banda and Zaire under Mobutu Sese Seko.

- The OAU member states that were formerly under Britain put pressure on the Commonwealth Organization to expel South Africa from this organization. This international isolation of the Apartheid regime finally led to its collapse in 1994.
- It condemned the abuse of human rights in South Africa by the Apartheid regime.
- OAU member states prohibited the movement of their citizens into South Africa by issuing pass ports with the words **"ALL COUNTRIES EXCEPT SOUTH AFRICA."**
- It put pressure on President De'clerk to end Apartheid which he finally accepted in 1994, thus leading to the liberation of South Africa.
- **THE ROLE OF THE FRONTLINE STATES IN THE LIBERATION OF SOUTH AFRICA:**
 - The Frontline states were independent African states which were near South Africa and they included Tanzania, Angola, Mozambique, Botswana, Zambia and Zimbabwe. These states played a big role as noted below;
 - They provided asylum to political refugees from South Africa. For example **Oliver Tambo** was hosted in Zambia. This helped the South African nationalists to organize themselves against the Apartheid regime.
 - They offered education opportunities to the young South Africans who had fled their country due to the harsh Apartheid laws. This helped to produce elites that spear headed the struggle against the Apartheid regime.
 - They imposed a **trade embargo** on South Africa. This weakened the economic stand of the Apartheid regime, hence leading to its collapse in 1994.
 - They offered training bases to the South African liberation movements like the African National Congress (ANC) and the Pan African Congress (PAC). This helped to train the guerrilla fighters that later launched attacks against the Apartheid regime in South Africa.
 - They took the lead in condemning and isolating the Apartheid regime in South Africa. This undermined the credibility of the Apartheid regime in the international community, thus leading to its collapse.
 - They put excessive pressure on President De'Clerk's government to introduce political reforms in South Africa. This forced the government to abolish the Apartheid laws and release the political prisoners like Nelson Mandela which was a major step in the liberation of South Africa.
 - They formed the **South African Development Coordination Conference** (SADCC) in 1979 with its headquarters at **Gaborone** in Botswana. Members of this organization refused South African imports into the member countries. This also weakened the economic stand of South Africa.
 - They looked for support from other nationalists and world bodies like the United Nations Organization (UNO). This support strengthened the South African nationalists in their struggle against the Apartheid regime.
 - The independence of the Front line states like Tanganyika in 1961, Zambia in 1964 as well as Mozambique in 1975 acted as an inspiration factor to the South African nationalists, hence forcing them to struggle hard against the Apartheid regime.

- They helped to exchange intelligence information with the South African freedom fighters. This enabled the South African nationalists to launch attacks against the Apartheid regime in South Africa.
- **THE ROLE OF THE UNITED NATIONS ORGANIZATION (UNO) IN THE LIBERATION OF SOUTH AFRICA:**
- The United Nations Organization (UNO) was formed in **October 1945** shortly after World War II at San Francisco, USA to replace the League of Nations that had failed to keep world peace. It had its headquarters in New York.
- As a peace loving body in the world, the UNO was against Apartheid in South Africa and therefore it played a major role in the liberation of South Africa as noted below;
- It provided a platform to the Africans both in South Africa and beyond to condemn the Apartheid regime in South Africa.
- It ended diplomatic relations with South Africa in 1961 due its unfair Apartheid laws.
- It set up a special committee against Apartheid in 1962. This committee looked for international support which helped to liberate South Africa from the Apartheid regime.
- It influenced the expulsion of South Africa from all international sporting activities like the Word Cup as well as the Olympic Games.
- It adopted the international Convention or Treaty on eliminating all forms of racial discrimination in 1965.
- In 1970, South Africa was excluded from the UNO General Assembly.
- It set up a Trust Fund for South Africa's publicity to fight Apartheid.
- It recognized the two liberation movements in South Africa i.e. the ANC and PAC. This gave them morale to fight against the Apartheid regime.
- It condemned the indiscriminate killings of innocent civilians during the Soweto demonstration of 1976. This helped to attract the attention of the international community towards the struggle for independence in South Africa.
- It approved and financed conferences that were organized to lay strategies for the liberation of South Africa. For example it financed the 1967 conference in Zambia.
- It demanded for the release of political prisoners. As a result, Nelson Mandela was released in 1990 greatly contributed to the liberation of South Africa.
- It collaborated with the Organization of African Unity (OAU) in the struggle against Apartheid. For example, through the OAU, the UNO offered financial assistance to the South African freedom fighters.
- It imposed economic sanctions on South Africa in 1962. These sanctions weakened the economic stand of the Apartheid regime, hence leading to its collapse in 1994.
- It imposed an arms embargo on South Africa and called up on its member countries not to sell arms to the Apartheid regime. This was aimed at weakening the military strength of South Africa.
- The UNO mediated talks between the Apartheid government and the armed groups like ANC especially in the 1990s. These talks finally led to the collapsed of the Apartheid regime in 1994.

- It sent observer teams to oversee or monitor elections for majority rule in 1994. As a result, the blacks became victorious under Nelson Mandela and this finally marked the end of Apartheid in South Africa.
- **OBSTACLES TO THE LIBERATION STRUGGLE IN SOUTH AFRICA:**
- The struggle against Apartheid ended in 1994 with the attainment of freedom in South Africa.
- The struggle took long to be completed because the Africans faced a number of obstacles.
- The problems to South Africa's liberation struggle worsened with the establishment of the **1910 Act of Union** and went on up to **1994** when South Africa achieved independence (freedom).
- The problems mainly centered around Apartheid and they included the following;
- There was tribalism due to the various ethnic groups or tribes that existed in South Africa like the Zulu, the Xhosa and the Nguni among others.
- There was language barrier due to the lack of a common language among the Africans of different tribes.
- There were power struggles among the African Nationalists because of the greed or desire for political power.
- There were ideological differences especially between the Africans who were capitalists and those who were communists. This eventually led to the breakup of the original African political parties. For example, the ANC broke up and gave birth to the PAC in 1959 under Robert Sobukwe.
- There was lack of strong or able leadership. At the beginning of the struggle, the Africans lacked determined and capable personalities to lead them against the Apartheid regime.
- There was wide spread poverty among the Africans due to the African peasant economies.
- Some African states for example Malawi and Zaire betrayed the South African struggle for freedom and instead supported the Apartheid government. This enabled the regime to defeat the Africans.
- There was military weakness of the Africans. For example, they had inferior weapons, limited training and poor tactics.
- There was a high level of illiteracy and ignorance among the Africans due to the limited education that they had attained.
- There was a poor transport network in terms of roads, buses and vehicles. This made communication and coordination between the Africans in the villages and those in urban centres (*towns*) very difficult.
- The economic strength of the South African government was major problem. It was rich because it controlled all the trade and commerce, the minerals and it also exploited the African land.
- The military strength of the Apartheid government was an obstacle. For example, it had a strong police as well as nuclear weapons which could defeat the Africans whenever they rose up.

- The support from USA and Canada to the Apartheid government also worked against African efforts towards independence. For example, they supported the Apartheid government in terms of arms and finance or money.
- The role of European countries like Britain and France which supported the Apartheid government also worked against African efforts.
- The increased number of white settlers in South Africa and their continued desire to exploit African resources like land and minerals also delayed South Africa's independence.
- The "*divide and rule policy*" that was introduced in South Africa by the whites also left the African communities divided.
- The effects of the Bantustans also delayed South Africa's independence especially by dividing Africans along tribal lines.
- Some Africans were also satisfied with the self-rule or independence that they had in the Bantustans and therefore they did not see a reason to fight against the Apartheid government.
- The low level of African nationalism among the Africans explains why many Africans refused to join the struggle.
- The role of **Chief Buthelezi**, the leader of the ***Inkatha Freedom Movement*** promoted tribal nationalism of the Zulu. This delayed the liberation on the entire South Africa.
- Many African nationalists who were leading the struggle against Apartheid were exiled by the Apartheid regime. For example, Oliver Tambo was exiled to Zambia.
- The delayed independence of the neighbouring states like Namibia up to 1990, Angola and Mozambique up to 1975 denied support from the above countries to the Africans in South Africa.
- At first the struggle was urban-based and therefore not supported in the rural areas.
- The white government was brutal (*harsh*) towards the Africans. For example, it had a brutal police which used teargas and guns to suppress the demonstrators for example at Sharpeville in 1960 and Soweto in 1976.
- The imprisonment of the leaders of the liberation struggle like Robert Sobukwe and Nelson Mandela was a problem.
- The killing of the leading African Nationalists like Steve Biko in 1977 weakened the struggle for independence.
- The weakness of the political parties like the African National Congress and the Pan African Congress delayed the struggle.
- The denial of freedom of movement to the Africans by the whites under the Pass system hindered the mobilization of the Africans for the independence struggle.
- The weaknesses of the United Nations Organization (UNO) delayed the struggle. For example, it had imposed weak **economic sanctions** on the Apartheid regime which it did not even supervise.
- The banning of African political parties made it hard to mobilize the Africans. For example, in 1961 the ANC and PAC were banned from operation by the Apartheid government.

- The Cold War politics between USA and USSR (Russia) delayed South Africa's independence. For example, the capitalist powers like USA gave support to the Apartheid regime so as to promote capitalism in South Africa.
- The desire to protect the white investments in South Africa made the European powers to support the Apartheid regime.
- The Africans delayed to form serious national political parties that could be used to mobilize the Africans against the Apartheid regime.
- The missionary influence softened the hearts of the Africans. For example, it made the Africans comfortable with the little pay that they received from the whites.
- The Apartheid government had a strong spy network that enabled it to gather information about the operation of the Africans.
- The continued use of the state of emergency by the white government undermined the liberation struggle.
- The existence of the conservative white leaders in South Africa who strongly believed in racism like Daniel Malan, John Vorster, Louis Botha and Dr. Verwoerd delayed the liberation struggle.
- **Why did the struggle against Apartheid in South Africa take long?**
- **REASONS FOR THE COLLAPSE OF APARTHEID IN SOUTH AFRICA IN 1994**
- The following factors led to the collapse of Apartheid in South Africa by 1994;
- The role of the United Nations Organization (UNO) which imposed economic sanctions on the Apartheid regime.
- The role of OAU.
- The attainment of independence by the neighbouring states like Angola and Mozambique in 1975 made the South Africans to work hard.
- The role of Fredrick De'Clerk who was the last Apartheid leader.
- The role of the Anglican Church under Archbishop Desmond Tutu led to the collapse of Apartheid.
- The role of the Common Wealth Organization.
- The role of **South African Development Coordination Conference** (SADCC) formed in 1979 with its headquarters at **Gaborone** in Botswana.
- The role of South African women like Winnie Mandela.
- The role of Frontline States.
- The role of ANC and its armed wing i.e. the *Umkhonto Wesizwe* (the Spear of the Nation).
- The role of the PAC and its armed wing known as the POQO.
- The role of the Soweto of 1976.
- The role of musicians like Lucky Dube led to the collapse of Apartheid. They composed songs that condemned the Apartheid regime.
- The role of Nelson Mandela.
- The role other nationalists like Steve Biko, Walter Sisulu and Oliver Tambo among others.
- The role of the mass media. The newspapers as well as television stations and radios were used to expose the evils of the Apartheid regime which eventually weakened the government.

- The Sharpeville massacre of 1960 attracted the attention of the international community towards the suffering of the Blacks in South Africa.
- The role Trade Unions like the Congress of South African Trade Unions.
- **THE HISTORY OF SOUTH WEST AFRICA OR NAMIBIA:**
- **THE GERMAN OCCUPATION OF NAMIBIA OR SOUTH WEST AFRICA:**
- **How did Germany acquire South West Africa (Namibia) as a colony?**
- South West Africa (Namibia) was originally inhabited by the Nama, Ovambo and Herero.
- The Herero were led by Samuel Maherero and the Nama by Hendrick Witboi.
- Long before the Germans occupied this area, the territory had been regarded as a South African territory.
- Then Europeans begun to show interest in the area and therefore the area was acquired due to the increasing competition for colonies.
- The first to settle were the missionaries and these first occupied the coast.
- Through the missionary activities in South West Africa, Germany gradually penetrated the Nama and Herero.
- In the effort to defeat the Nama, the leader of the Herero (Samuel Maherero) requested for Germany assistance.
- Later, the missionaries reported the instabilities between the Nama and the Herero to their home government.
- Then the traders or German merchants followed the missionaries. These also first concentrated at the coast but later penetrated the interior.
- The German traders like **Franz Luderitz** opened gates to the German colonization of South West Africa (Namibia).
- In **1883**, the Germany government granted a charter or permission to **Franz Luderitz** to sign treaties with African chiefs in the area.
- In 1883, Luderitz bought **Angla Pequena**, later **Luderitz Bay** and also the land lying five miles around it from a Nama chief known as **Joseph Fredrick of Bethany**.
- He began expanding this territory by signing other treaties and purchasing land from other chiefs.
- Later, there was a scramble for South West Africa between the Germans and the British at the Cape.
- Earlier in **1876**, **William Palgrave** had been sent as a representative of the Cape Colony government.
- In **1878**, the British had annexed **Walvis Bay** but they were not prepared to meet the costs of the annexation.
- Later in **1880**, the German Chancellor **Otto Von Bismarck** asked the British government whether it was prepared to give protection to the German subjects in the area.
- When the British refused to reply, the Germans established their authority in the area and due to this and the increased requests from the missionaries, the German parliament agreed to take over Namibia.

- On **24th April 1884**, the Germans declared South West Africa as a German Colony in order to take over Namibia.
- Once Germany had declared a Protectorate over the territory, she sent a special imperial commissioner known as **Heinrich Goering** to sign treaties with the African chiefs and he organized the new colony.
- Germany also acquired Namibia through the **use of African collaborators** like **Khama Herero** who was the first to accept German protection though he later changed his mind in 1888.
- They also used military means or force. For example, the Germans sent a large military force into Herero land to force the Herero to accept their rule.
- They Used divide and rule. For example, in 1890 the Germans intervened in the Herero dynastic quarrel or conflict. **Samuel Maherero** and **Nicodemus Kavikunua** both struggled to succeed Khama Herero who had died in the same year. The Germans helped Samuel Maherero to assume power.
- In return for German support, Samuel Maherero had to sign a treaty of protection with the Germans.
- By 1900, the Germans were fully established in Namibia.
- Later, when the Nama and Herero jointly rose up against the Germans, the Germans fought and defeated them before the establishment of firm rule over South West Africa.
- The German rule in South West Africa (Namibia) lasted till **1918**.
- **REASONS FOR THE GERMAN OCCUPATION OF NAMIBIA**
- Germany officially took over Namibia in **1884** during the Berlin Conference of 1884 – 1885 which partitioned Africa among the European powers.
- There were political and social factors for this colonization process. Some factors originated in Europe which are the **external factors** while others originated from within Namibia (internal factors). These factors included the following;
- The unification or independence of Germany in **1871** led to the German takeover of Namibia. That is, as a young nation established in **1871**, Germany wanted to show its military strength to the rest of the world.
- The change in the balance of power in Europe after the **Franco-Prussian War of 1870 – 1871** was another factor. This war made Germany to become the land master in Europe after defeating France which had previously been the land master. This increased Germany's desire for colonies in Africa or imperialism.
- The need for international prestige or fame and glory by the Germans made them to take over Namibia. That is, the colonies were regarded as a sign of prestige by the European powers.
- The desire by each country in Europe to acquire more colonies as fast as possible forced German to take over Namibia.
- The period of the Scramble and Partition of Africa could not save the South West Africans from the German occupation.
- The role of **Otto Von Bismarck**, the Chancellor of Germany by then was important. He wanted to win political support from the Germans by acquiring colonies like Namibia.

- The role of the **Berlin Conference of 1884 – 1885**. This conference officially gave Namibia to the Germans, thus leading to her colonization.
- The effects of the **industrial revolution** in Europe led to the German occupation of Namibia. For example;
 - It created the desire to get raw materials for the German industries like cotton, rubber, uranium, diamond, copper, tin, and manganese.
 - There was also the desire to get markets for the German finished products which forced the Germans to takeover Namibia.
 - The need to acquire land for agricultural development also forced the Germans to takeover Namibia.
 - The need to invest their surplus capital in South West Africa led to the German occupation in 1884.
- Namibia was strategically located and would enable Germany to expand East wards into Central Africa.
- The desire to control the profitable trade at the coast of Namibia led to the German occupation.
- The formation of the German Colonization Society increased the desire for colonies by Germany.
- The British presence in South Africa created fear among the Germans and forced them to occupy Namibia.
- The surrounding of Botswana by the British scared the Germans, hence forcing them to occupy Namibia in 1884.
- The Germans wanted to use South West Africa (Namibia) to resettle the surplus German population.
- The pressure from the German traders who were already at **Walvis Bay** led to the German occupation of Namibia so as to protect their economic interests in the country.
- The early missionaries had also invited the Germans to spread Christianity to Namibia. It was therefore a move to civilize the natives by converting them to Christianity.
- The first Anglo-Boer war of 1880 - 1881 increased the Scramble for South Africa which made the Germans to occupy Namibia in 1884.
- The German desire to establish a link with Paul Kruger the President of the Boers Republic of Transvaal in South Africa made them to occupy Namibia which was a neighbour to South Africa.
- The coastal areas of South West Africa like the Walvis Bay had a rich breeding ground for fish species like Pilchards, Craw fish and others which encouraged the Germans to takeover Namibia.
- The need to check on the British extension and expansion (imperialism) into Southern Africa by the Germans led to the takeover of Namibia.
- The role of the German explorers who had provided good geographical knowledge to the Germans encouraged Germany to takeover Namibia in 1884.

- The discovery of minerals in South Africa like diamond in 1867 and the subsequent struggle for these mineral riches between the British and the Boers forced the Germans to occupy Namibia.
- The favourable coastal climate of South West Africa encouraged the Germans to take over the country.
- The presence of fertile soils in Namibia which would favour agriculture led to the German takeover in 1884.
- The presence of tribal conflicts between the Herero and the Nama encouraged the Germans to annex South West Africa so as to end these conflicts. The missionaries had reported these instabilities to their home government.
- The role of the German parliament that cleared the Germans to enter the colonial race was important. This is because initially the German government was against acquiring colonies.
- The need to protect the German missionaries in Namibia like the **Rhenish Missionaries** made Germany to takeover Namibia.
- The need to promote German civilization which they believed to be superior over the Africans led to the German occupation of Namibia.
- The German fear that France and Britain would take over Namibia led to the German occupation in 1884.
- The Germans were also requested by the Africans especially the Herero to take over the area.
- The financial support given by the missionaries encouraged the Germans to occupy Namibia in 1884.
- The military superiority or strength of the Germans encouraged them to occupy Namibia.
- With the above factors, Germany occupied and ruled Namibia until after the end of the First World War of 1914 – 1918 when she lost the country to the white regime in South Africa.
- **EFFECTS OF THE GERMAN RULE ON THE PEOPLES OF NAMIBIA:**
- It generated strong resistance from the Nama and Herero people because of its brutality or harshness.
- The Africans who resisted were defeated and therefore the Germans fully took over Namibia. They therefore introduced the German policy of **"Direct rule"** in Namibia.
- The Africans lost their independence and therefore they were conquered completely by the Germans until 1990 when the Namibians regained their independence.
- The African chiefs were overthrown by the Germans. These included **Samuel Maherero** of the Herero and **Hendrick Witboi** of the Nama.
- Some Africa Chiefs were killed because of their resistance to the German rule like **Hendrick Witboi** and **Jacob Molenga**.
- A German protectorate was declared over Namibia and all forms of traditional authority or leadership and chiefdoms were abolished.
- The Africans were subjected to the German brutal or harsh rule. For example, there was public flogging or caning, murder as well as imprisonment.
- It led to the introduction of the German discrimination in Namibia.

- The Africans lost much of their land to the German settlers for their farming and settlement. As a result, they were displaced and the country was divided into white-controlled areas.
- The displaced Africans were sent to unproductive areas deserts or reserves.
- The African economic activities like agriculture and trade were disorganized, thus making the Africans poor.
- The Germans imposed high and unfair taxes on the Africans. This was associated with cruel or bad methods of tax collection.
- The unfair **Credit Law of 1903** was another effect. The law demanded that the Africans were to pay two herds of cattle for the money (debts) they had borrowed from the Germans which led to the loss of their cattle.
- There was destruction of African property by the Germans especially during the African resistances against the German rule.
- The Africans lost cattle to the Germans through unfair means. This led to the weakening of the pastoral economy of the Herero and the Nama. As a result, there was rampant poverty among the Africans.
- The Africans lost their dignity or respect and were made second class citizens in their own country.
- There was forced labour and therefore the Africans were forcefully enslaved on the German farms.
- The African received little or no pay for their work on the German farms.
- African freedom of movement was restricted and they all had to carry pass books.
- It became illegal for the Africans to own land and cattle in Namibia.
- It led to the loss of trust in African traditional leaders since they had failed to defend Namibia's independence from the Germans.
- Missionary influence in Namibia increased after the German occupation. As a result, there was spread of Christianity in Namibia.
- Christianity left the Africans in Namibia divided along religious lines and also confused.
- It led to the spread of formal education in Namibia through the establishment of schools by the Germans.
- It also led to the spread of Western civilization like the German culture in form of language and dressing.
- The Africans abandoned their traditional customs and culture and they adopted the Western culture that was introduced by the Germans.
- It led to the rise of traditional religious leaders like **Starman** to challenge the new Christian values and religious beliefs.
- The Nama lost their war-like attitude after being defeated by the Germans.
- Agriculture also declined resulting into famine and starvation.
- It led to the disarmament of the Africans in Namibia by the Germans.
- The German brutal administration caused internal rebellions in Namibia which led to the loss of lives by the Africans.
- For example the Herero lost three quarters of their population and the Nama lost a half. Indeed, only 20% of the Nama and Herero population survived.

- There was increase in the German population in Namibia. For example, by 1913, it had reached 1,950 from the original 1,500. This led to more loss of land by the Africans.
- It increased African nationalism as the Africans tried to do away with the harsh German rule.
- It led to the collaboration of the Herero with the Germans for some time due to the German policy of **"Divide and rule"**.
- As some tribes collaborated, this increased the tension and conflicts among the tribes of Namibia.
- There was development of infrastructures like roads, towns, schools, railways and hospitals which later benefited the Africans in Namibia.
- The Africans acquired jobs on the German mines and farms.
- There was introduction of new crops like cotton, coffee and sugarcane.
- It led to the German exploitation of African natural resources like minerals. This increased poverty among the Africans.
- *Why did Germany gain control of Namibia by 1884?*
- *How did the German occupation affect the people of South West Africa (Namibia)?*
- **THE NAMA-HERERO REBELLION OF 1904 – 1907:**
- It was a rebellion among the Nama and the Herero people of South West Africa (Namibia).
- The rebellion was against the Germans who had established themselves in the area by 1884.
- It began in **1904** and ended in **1907**.
- The Herero people were the first to rebel on **12th January 1904**.
- And they were followed by the Nama in **October 1904**.
- The Herero were led by their Chief **Samuel Khama Herero** or **Maherero**.
- The Nama were led by their leaders like **Hendrick Witboi** and **Jacob Molenga**.
- The Germans or Europeans were led by General **Lothar Von Trotha** and Governor **Leutwein**.
- It was the climax of the long term conflicts between the Germans and the Africans in Namibia.
- **THE CAUSES OF THE REBELLION:**
- The Africans wanted to **regain** their lost independence.
- The Africans wanted to end the bad German administration.
- The Germans had undermined (*disrespected*) the authority of the traditional African leaders which annoyed the Africans. For example, they were not consulted when taking over their land and power.
- The harsh German rule and mistreatment of the Africans caused the rebellion. For example, there was public flogging (*beating*), imprisonment and murder of Africans.
- They hated the influence of the German Christian missionaries in Namibia because of undermining the African cultural practices like religion and dressing.
- The Germans were weakening the pastoral economy of the Nama – Herero through taking away their cattle, thus leading to rampant poverty.
- The Africans hated the loss of their fertile land to the German settlers.

- The construction of a railway line through the Herero land caused the rebellion. This was because the Germans failed to compensate the Africans for their lost land which annoyed them.
- The Africans hated the loss of their cattle to the settlers through stealing, raiding and scientific breeding.
- The reduction of cattle through the Rinder - Pest disease led to the rebellion because it was interpreted by the Africans as a bad omen that was brought by the Germans.
- The outbreak of other natural calamities like drought and famine which were also blamed on the coming of the whites caused the rebellion.
- The over taxation of Africans by the Germans caused the rebellion.
- The poor or cruel methods of tax collection employed by the Germans also annoyed the Africans.
- The forcing of the Africans into reserves or camps with poor conditions led to the rebellion.
- The 1903 government order for the Africans to repay their debts in form of cattle annoyed the Africans because it led to more loss of their cattle.
- Worst of all, they were to repay the debts in a short period of time (*one year*).
- The bad methods of implementing Government directives or orders generated hatred and resistance from the Africans.
- The long term enmity or hatred between the Germans and Africans in Namibia caused the rebellion.
- The outbreak of other wars like the Anglo - Zulu Wars of 1879, the Shona - Ndebele rebellion of 1896 – 1897 as well as the Basuto war of guns of 1880 – 1881 encouraged the Nama and Herero to rise up against the Germans in Namibia.
- The increased German population worried the Africans. For example, by 1903 over 3,000 Germans had settled in Namibia.
- The fear of being disarmed caused the rebellion. The Africans feared that the Germans may take away their guns which they valued very much.
- The temporary withdrawal of the German forces from Namibia caused anxiety and gave the Africans courage to rebel.
- The influence of **Prophet Starman** (a *traditional religious leader*) acted as a unifying factor since he promised the Africans victory in case of an uprising against the Germans.
- The Germans discriminated the Africans in all aspects which annoyed them, hence forcing them to rise up in Namibia.
- The influence of the African Independent Churches in South and Central Africa especially through their slogan of "*Africa for Africans*" increased the desire for independence among the Africans. This influenced the Africans in Namibia to rebel.
- The presence of able leaders who inspired other Africans to fight caused the rebellion. These included Samuel Khama Maherero, Jacob Molenga and Hendrick Witboi.
- **EFFECTS OF THE NAMA – HERERO REBELLION:**
- The Africans were defeated by the Germans.

- Africans lost their independence and therefore they were conquered completely by the Germans.
- The Africans leaders lost their power and some were killed like Hendrick Witboi and Jacob Molenga.
- The rebellion led to the loss of lives on both sides. For example, many Africans died and over 9,000 Germans were killed.
- Others were wounded during the course of fighting.
- There was destruction of property especially cattle at most of which was wiped out.
- The Africans were forced to live in reserves under very poor conditions like congestion and diseases.
- The Africans lost their dignity or respect as they became second class citizens in their own country.
- The Africans were forcefully enslaved on the German farms through forced labour.
- The African freedom of movement was restricted and they had to carry pass books.
- The war was costly to the Germans since they used a lot of money to finance it.
- The traditional forms of authority were abolished by the Germans. This was because the traditional leaders in Namibia had influenced the Africans to rise up against the Germans.
- The Africans abandoned their traditional customs and culture.
- The rights of the Africans were violated by the Germans.
- The Namibians became completely dominated by the Germans i.e. the Africans submitted to the German rule.
- There was a decline in trade.
- Agriculture also declined leading to famine.
- The Africans lost their land to the Germans.
- It became illegal for the Africans to own land and cattle.
- The African economy was disorganized and disrupted which led to wide spread poverty.
- After the rebellion, heavy taxes were introduced to the Africans by the Germans.
- The failure of this rebellion made the Africans determined to fight for their independence. This later gave birth to the modern nationalistic struggle in Namibia against the South African occupation which ended with the independence of Namibia in 1990.
- It led to the loss of trust in African culture and traditional religious leaders since they had not helped the Africans to defeat the Germans.
- Missionary influence in Namibia increased after the rebellion which led to the wide spread of Christianity.
- The population of the German settlers in Namibia increased. For example, by 1913 it had reached 1950 from 1500.
- It led to the increased refugee problem in the neighboring countries like Angola as many Africans fled the fighting in Namibia.
- The Africans in Namibia were disarmed by the Germans after the rebellion which reduced their military strength.

- It led to the collaboration of the Herero with the Germans for some time. This therefore increased tension and conflicts among the Africans.
- There was development of infrastructure like roads and railways by the Germans in Namibia which later benefited the Africans.
- It ended the petty wars between the Nama and Herero when both were fully put under the German control.
- The Africans were discriminated further by the Germans.
- The African resources like minerals were exploited by the Germans.
- The rebellion increased insecurity in Namibia.
- It worsened the enmity between the Africans and Germans.
- The Africans learnt a lesson not to use armed rebellion against the colonial masters.
- **REASONS WHY THE REBELLION FAILED:**
- The Africans lacked total unity as the Nama refused to join the Herero to fight together.
- The German policy of divide and rule created resistors and collaborators among the Africans which weakened the Africans.
- The Germans learnt about the rebellion early enough before it began and therefore they were prepared for it.
- The military superiority of the Germans who were better trained compared to the Africans.
- The Africans had inferior and outdated weapons like spears and arrows which could not defeat the Germans.
- The Africans had been weakened by diseases like the rinder pest and small pox.
- The Germans acted ruthlessly killing whoever they met, hence destroying the morale of the Africa fighters.
- The Germans used the "**scorched earth policy**" that involved burning and destroying everything on their way which weakened the Africans.
- The failure of traditional religion and spirits to help the Africans led to their defeat.
- The Africans lacked proper leadership after their traditional leaders were killed by the Germans.
- The ruthless and cruel leadership of General **Lother Von Trotha** who led the Germans created fear among the Africans.
- **NAMIBIA UNDER THE SOUTH AFRICAN OCCUPATION (1920 – 1990):**
- In 1884 – 1885, the Germans colonized Namibia and the territory came to be known as **German West Africa**.
- Germany was, however, defeated during **World War I of 1914 – 1918**. As a punishment for causing this war, the victorious powers made Germany to lose all her colonies in Africa, including Namibia.
- As a result, the **Versailles Peace Treaty of 1919** which ended the war authorized South Africa which was by then under the whites, to rule Namibia then known as German West Africa.
- Namibia was therefore taken over by South Africa as a **mandated state** and was to be administered on behalf of the **League of Nations**, an international organization that had been formed in 1920 to maintain world peace.

- South Africa convinced the League of Nations that it would develop Namibia.
- **REASONS WHY SOUTH AFRICA TOOK OVER SOUTH WEST AFRICA OR NAMIBIA IN 1920 - 1945:**
- The loss of all the German colonies in Africa after World War I placed Namibia under the control of South Africa.
- The South African troops had captured Namibia from the Germans during the course of World War I. This enabled South Africa to occupy Namibia.
- The support that the Boer ex-servicemen like General Smuts and Louis Botha gave to the victorious powers (Britain and France) in World War I against Germany in the East African Campaign made Namibia to be given to South Africa as a reward.
- The victorious powers allowed South Africa to take over South West Africa as a punishment to Germany which had caused World War I.
- The absence of a responsible government was another factor. South Africa was mandated to administer South West Africa until the territory was ready for self-governance or independence.
- The proximity (*nearness*) of South West Africa to South Africa encouraged the victorious powers to put Namibia under to South Africa.
- The strategic importance of Namibia to South Africa. For example, the Namibian coastline had bays like the **Walvis Bay** which would provide the South African government with accessibility to the Atlantic Ocean.
- The abundant mineral wealth in Namibia like Zinc, Silver, Uranium, Lead and Diamond attracted the South African government into the area.
- The area had fishing grounds thus providing fishing potential to South Africa.
- The fertile soils in South West Africa (Namibia) encouraged South Africa to occupy her so as to promote agriculture.
- The South African government (*Boer government*) wanted to prevent the South African nationalists under the ANC from using Namibia as a base to organize themselves against the Apartheid regime.
- The desire to prevent the spread of **communism** in Namibia from neighbouring Angola by China, Cuba and the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (USSR) made South Africa to occupy Namibia. This was a threat to South Africa which was a capitalist state.
- South Africa wanted to protect her citizens who were already staying in Namibia.
- Namibia would also provide markets to the South African industrial goods.
- The collapse of the League of Nations in 1945 gave a chance to South Africa to annex Namibia. South Africa accepted to be answerable to the UNO in order to maintain her control over Namibia.
- **THE INDEPENDENCE STRUGGLE IN SOUTH WEST AFRICA (NAMIBIA), 1966 – 1990:**
- After World War II, the **League of Nations** was succeeded by the **United Nations Organization (UNO)** and Namibia as mandated to South Africa on behalf of the UNO until **1966** when she was asked by the UNO to vacate Namibia.

- However, South Africa arrogantly continued to control Namibia illegally and in **1969**, she finally annexed Namibia and declared her the **5th province** of South Africa. This encouraged the Namibians to fight for their independence.
- The struggle for independence in Namibia was carried out by a liberation movement known as the **South West African People's Organization** (SWAPO) which was established in **1960** under the leadership of **Sam Nujoma**.
- The SWAPO was joined by another political party known as the **South West African National Union** (SWANU) formed in **1955**. These two fought war against South Africa from **25th August 1966** up to **21st March 1990**, when it succeeded with the independence of Namibia.
- **PROBLEMS FACED BY THE NAMIBIANS IN THEIR STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE:**
 - The increased number of white settlers in Namibia from South Africa and the need to protect their economic interests delayed Namibia's Independence.
 - The introduction of Apartheid policy in Namibia was an obstacle. After declaring Namibia the 5th province of South Africa in 1969, similar Apartheid Laws were introduced as they were in South Africa and this made it difficult for the Africans in Namibia to struggle for their Independence.
 - The huge investments of South Africa in Namibia became a problem. South Africa had a number of multi - national companies which had heavily invested in Namibia and she feared that in case Namibia became independent Namibian she would stop such companies from operating.
 - The South African government used harsh means to stop the Namibians from liberating themselves. For example, many were arrested and imprisoned while others were killed.
 - Namibia had a lot of mineral resources like Copper, Diamond and Zinc which South Africa wanted to continue exploiting.
 - The desire to prevent the spread of communism into South Africa from Angola made South Africa to hold onto Namibia for long.
 - The economic strength of South Africa was a major obstacle. South Africa was an industrial giant which enabled her to finance a war against the Namibian nationalists.
 - The military strength of South Africa compared to Namibia was another obstacle. South Africa was military power with nuclear weapons and therefore she crushed the guerilla activities of SWAPO through carrying out raids on the SWAPO bases.
 - Poverty delayed the independence of Namibia. The Namibian nationalists lacked enough money to finance any successful struggle against the economically powerful South Africa.
 - The need by South Africa to stop the ANC from operating in Namibia against the Apartheid government also delayed the independence struggle.
 - The need to maintain a constant supply of cheap labour by South Africa delayed the struggle for independence.
 - The Namibians were divided along tribal lines which delayed their struggle. For example, the **NAMA** and **HERERO** tribes joined South Africa and fought against the

OVAMBO tribe of Northern Namibia who were leading the struggle for Independence.

- The weakness of the United Nations Organization (UNO) delayed the Namibian struggle for independence. For example, it imposed weak economic sanctions on South Africa which failed to force South Africa out of Namibia.
- The weakness of the Organization of African Unity (OAU) was another problem. For example, it lacked an army that would push South Africa out of Namibia.
- The presence of foreign investments in Namibia was another obstacle. South Africa had allowed foreign countries like USA, Germany, Britain, France and Canada to establish their investments in Namibia. These countries therefore gave military and financial support to South Africa so as to protect their investments in Namibia.
- The Cold War Politics delayed Namibia's independence. This was because it made the capitalist countries like USA to support South Africa against the Namibian nationalists.
- The use of peaceful means to fight for independence in the initial stages delayed the struggle until when force or militarism was applied.
- The delayed Independence of the neighbouring countries like Angola made it hard for Namibia to get external military and financial support from these countries since they were also struggling for their Independence.
- Namibia lacked elites or nationalist leaders to lead them against South Africa until the emergence of **Sam Nujoma** later.
- **REASONS FOR THE SUCCESS OF THE INDEPENDENCE STRUGGLE IN NAMIBIA:**
 - The Independence struggle was carried out by SWAPO under the leadership of Sam Nujoma. Namibia attained her Independence from South Africa in 1990 because of the following factors;
 - The support from the neighbouring states was important. For example, after achieving independence in **1975**, Angola provided military bases for the training of the Namibian fighters.
 - The able leadership of Sam Nujoma led to the success of the independence struggle in Namibia. For example, in 1960, he formed a political group known as the **South West African People's Organization** (SWAPO) which fought against the South African occupation.
 - The military support from the communist countries led to the success of the struggle. For example, USSR helped to train the SWAPO fighters which helped them to acquire military skills that enabled them to fight against South Africa.
 - The role of the **South West African National Union** (SWANU) was also important. Formed in **1955**, SWANU co-operated with SWAPO which eventually led to the success of the liberation struggle.
 - The United Nations Organization (UNO) imposed economic sanctions on the South African government which forced her to grant Independence to Namibia.
 - The support from the Organization of African Unity (OAU) was vital. For example, it gave both military and financial support to the Namibian fighters which enabled them to attain independence.

- **THE ROLE OF THE SOUTH WEST AFRICAN PEOPLE'S ORGANISATION (SWAPO) IN THE INDEPENDENCE STRUGGLE OF NAMIBIA:**
- SWAPO was one of the strongest political parties that led the struggle for independence in Namibia.
- It started as the **Ovambo People's Organization (OPO)** in **1959**.
- It was formed by **Sam Nujoma** and **Jacob Kahenge**.
- Later in **1960**, it was transformed into the **South West African People's Organization (SWAPO)** and it represented the densely populated northern areas of Namibia.
- Sam Nujoma became its most important leader.
- SWAPO played a great role in Namibia's struggle as noted below;
- SWAPO provided able leadership to the liberation struggle in Namibia. The party had good leaders like **Sam Nujoma** who convinced many Namibians to join the struggle against South Africa.
- SWAPO educated and sensitized the Namibian masses on the importance of freedom or independence. The party leaders organized and addressed rallies through which they sensitized people on the need for independence struggle which inspired the masses to rise up.
- It adopted **violence** against South Africa through bombing sensitive economic infrastructures like banks, bridges and industries. This disrupted the white activities especially in the Ovambo land which eventually forced South Africa out Namibia by 1990.
- It fought against the continued land grabbing by the Apartheid regime in Namibia.
- The party campaigned for liberty and a non-racial state for Namibia from 1973 onwards. This increased pressure on South Africa which eventually led to the liberation of Namibia by 1990.
- It organized demonstrations and strikes against the white rule.
- It refused to participate in the politics of Namibia as long as Apartheid regime refused to make reforms. This also increased pressure on the Apartheid regime in South Africa which eventually forced her to grant independence to Namibia.
- It opposed the proposals of the **Turnhalle Conference** of September **1975** to October **1977** which never supported a fully independent Namibia.
- For example, the party leaders refused to participate in elections organized in **1978** by the Apartheid regime on the Turnhalle proposal of power sharing between the Namibians and the South Africans.
- It even persuaded a large number of voters to boycott these elections. This was because these elections were not held according to the provisions of the UNO and were also characterized by widespread intimidation from the South African troops.
- The party leaders like Sam Nujoma risked and sacrificed their lives for the sake of liberating Namibia.
- The openly criticized and attacked the unpopular government programmes in Namibia like the Bantustans and the pass system. This influenced the Namibians to rise up and demand for independence.

- SWAPO co-operated with the women in the struggle for independence. It established **Women Leagues** and through these associations, the women supplied food to the freedom fighters, acted as spies and at times they engaged in fighting against the South African forces.
- It convinced the communist countries like China and USSR to support the liberation struggle in Namibia.
- It also convinced the Organization of African Unity (OAU) to join the Namibian struggle for independence.
- They appealed to the UNO for support. As a result, the UNO imposed gave both financial and military assistance to the Namibians against South Africa which led to the independence of Namibia.
- They published the evils of the Apartheid regime in Namibia to the international community, thus convincing the international community to support the struggle for independence in Namibia.
- They came up with the slogans like **"Aluta Continua"** or **"The Struggle Continues"**. These slogans inspired the youths to take action against the South African government
- SWAPO co-operated with other political parties in Namibia like SWANU (*The South West African National Union*) to struggle against the Whites in Namibia.
- It mobilized the youths and women to join the struggle against the South African government.
- It worked closely with the **trade unions** in Namibia to struggle for Independence. These trade unions organized workers' strikes against South African regime. For example, in December 1971, there was a nationwide strike by over 20,000 contract workers. Such strikes finally forced the Apartheid regime out of Namibia
- They secured support from the neighbouring countries like Angola, Zambia and Botswana which allowed SWAPO to set up training bases there.
- SWAPO worked closely with nationalist political parties in other countries like the **MPLA** (the Popular Movement for the Liberation of Angola) and the **FRELIMO** (the Front for the Liberation of Mozambique) to end the white rule in Namibia.
- SWAPO carried out communist or socialist reforms in the liberated zones which improved the conditions of the masses. For example, it built schools, hospitals and also carried out land redistribution. This made the masses happy which influenced them to support the independence struggle in big numbers.
- They published articles through the newspapers, magazines and journals in which it condemned the South African Apartheid regime. This helped to mobilize and sensitize the masses.
- The party leaders like Sam Nujoma later participated in the **1990 general elections** that finally freed Namibia from the South Africa's occupation.
- SWAPO received independence from the South African whites in 1990 and its leader Sam Nujoma became the first president of Independent Namibia.
- **PROBLEMS FACED BY SWAPO**
- Like any other freedom fighter party, SWAPO lacked financial support to carry out its activities.

- It failed to unite members together.
- Influence of South Africa within South West African affairs.
- Many supporters were arrested and killed.
- It lacked very strong leaders for better organization.
- SWAPO lacked grass root leadership to mobilize Africans.
- Some leaders championed tribal conflicts within SWAPO.
- SWAPO lacked effective military support to fight against the white regime.
- Africans were subjected to many restrictions which made it difficult for SWAPO to achieve intended objectives.
- Since World War II, the South African government looked at South West Africa as the fifth province of the Union of South Africa and therefore it could not easily let it get her independence.
- The South African government refused to acknowledge the United Nations rights in Namibia.
- The whites in Namibia were not in favour of the independence.
- SWAPO suffered raids from South Africa. For example, in 1978 the South African forces raided the SWAPO base at Kassinga inside Angola.
- Apartheid was fully extended in Namibia which made it hard for SWAPO to fight for independence.
- ***THE HISTORY OF BECHUANALAND OR BOTSWANA SINCE 1885***
- Bechuanaland is the present day Botswana.
- This was formally land of the Tswana people.
- During the second half of the 19th century, Bechuanaland was led generally by Chief Khama III.
- He attended a Lutheran Mission school where he developed great love for western culture and education.
- He became converted to Christianity and his Christian attitude and love of western culture encouraged the British to annex his area.
- He invited the London Missionary Society (L.M.S) to establish a school at the Royal Kraal or his capital.
- The persuasive character of Chief Khama III set the stage for the British annexation of the area.
- He had asked the British for protection in 1876 but the British were not interested at first
- He went ahead to lobby the British parliament and Queen Victoria for protection.
- **REASONS FOR THE BRITISH ANNEXATION OF BECHUANALAND IN 1885**
- The British annexation was however influenced by factors from Europe and some within Africa which included the following;
- The British annexed Bechuanaland since this was a period of the scramble for and partition of Africa and therefore the British had picked interest in colonies.
- The strategic location of Bechuanaland encouraged the British to annex the area. This was because the British wanted to control the inland route from the Cape to Transvaal and Kalahari Desert.

- The effects of the Franco-Prussian War of 1870 – 1871 encouraged the British to annex Bechuanaland. For example, it changed the balance of power in Europe in favour of Germany.
- The growth of nationalism among European powers like France, Germany and Britain led to the annexation of Bechuanaland.
- The British desired to acquire many colonies abroad for international prestige or recognition as a strong nation.
- The effects of the industrial revolution in Europe led to the British annexation of Bechuanaland. For example;
- The British wanted to get raw materials like cash crops, minerals and timber for their industries.
- They also wanted to get market in Bechuanaland for their excess industrial goods.
- There was also need to invest their surplus capital in Bechuanaland for economic development.
- The British also needed to settle their surplus or unemployed population caused by the industrial revolution.
- There was also need to promote legitimate trade and commerce with the local people.
- The British thought that Bechuanaland had minerals especially uranium. This was after the discovery of gold in Transvaal in 1885.
- The British were scared by the presence of the German imperialism in Namibia whom they did not want to have connections with their old enemies, the Boers in Transvaal. The Boer alliance with the Germans in Namibia would force the British out of South Africa.
- The British also feared the German alliance with the Portuguese at the coast of Mozambique. This would also dislodge them from South Africa.
- The British defeat by the Boers during the First Anglo-Boer War of 1880-1881 led to the annexation of Bechuanaland.
- The British desired to frustrate the Boers politically since they Boers had blocked the British plan to federate or unite the whole of South Africa under their control. The annexation was therefore done to clear the way for the federation plan.
- The British also wanted to protect their missionaries living in Bechuanaland by then.
- The British desired to protect the British traders and settlers living in Bechuanaland.
- The British missionaries wanted to promote the spread of Christianity in the area.
- There was need to spread western education and civilization to the local people.
- The Berlin Conference of 1884-1885 also made Britain to annex Bechuanaland since it encouraged European Powers to acquire colonies in Africa.
- The British annexed Bechuanaland due to the love for adventure.
- The rise of the British imperialist Cecil Rhodes and his dream of uniting South Africa under the British flag encouraged the British annexation of Bechuanaland in 1885.
- Cecil Rhodes also had plans to build a railway from the Cape to Cairo through Bechuanaland. Basing on this therefore, the British took over Bechuanaland in 1885.
- The British declared a protectorate over Bechuanaland in **1885**.
- It was finally incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1895.

- ***PROBLEMS FACED BY THE BRITISH DURING THE ANNEXATION OF BOTSWANA***

- The British faced many political, economic and social problems during the annexation.
- The first problem was lack of full British support from London
- The British public opinion was against investing money in Botswana.
- Botswana seemed to have no economic significance.
- Colonies also had been too expensive for the British to support
- The British Empire in South Africa had been too big to monitor properly.
- There was not enough manpower at the beginning.
- The supplies like medicine, arms and food were initially in short supply.
- There was no infrastructural development. For example, no railway and clear roads.
- The country had no communication networks like telegraphs
- There was no medical personnel like doctors and nurses.
- There were diseases like malaria, sleeping sickness etc.
- There were also the conservative traditional leaders like the chiefs of Bakwena and Bamangwato.
- These chiefs never wanted to lose their authority even when it was to benefit the people.
- In the beginning, it was difficult to identify the centre of authority.
- Identification centre of authority was difficult because there was a paramount chief.
- The Tswana lived in about eight clans.
- Each clan lived independently
- There were inter-tribal differences. Tribal disunity
- The Bamwangato royal family resisted British annexation.
- They hated chief Khama III for abandoning African cultural and religion.
- The people of Bechuanaland opposed the annexation.
- They were concerned of losing their land to the settlers like in neighbouring South Africa.
- The economy of Botswana was weak initially and not beneficial to the British.
- There was a problem of the colonial communicating policies to the local people due to language barrier.
- The British had the fear of being attacked by their old enemies the Boers in Transvaal and being thrown out.
- They still feared the Boer greed for Bechuanaland.
- They also feared German presence in neighbouring Namibia.
- The London treaty of 1884 had also created the small Boer republics of Goshen and Stella land in Southern Tswana land which could be used a stepping stone for Boer attacks.
- The pioneer British colonists lacked geographical knowledge about the country.
- There were geographical barriers like the dry conditions of the Kalahari Desert that extended into Botswana.
- The country was sometimes faced with famine.

- There were internal conflicts and unrest among the people of Botswana leading to insecurity.
- The British faced the problem of the rise of African nationalism in Botswana. The rise of African nationalism led to criticism of the British policies and resistance.
- The local people pressurised the British for their independence.
- The increasing number of the African elites and the return of World War II veterans became a political threat to the British administrators.
- ***REASONS WHY WERE THE BRITISH NOT INTERESTED IN BOTSWANA AT FIRST***
- Before 1885, the British were not interested in Botswana due to the following reasons:
 - The Portuguese were initially interested in spreading their influence in Botswana. Therefore, the British did not want to conflict with the Portuguese.
 - The Germans in neighbouring Namibia also had some influence in Botswana. For example, they had their missionaries and traders operating there. Therefore, the British also did not want to conflict with these Germans.
 - The area was not rich in raw materials and minerals to attract the British.
 - The Boers in Transvaal had shown interest in Botswana.
 - While the British were more interested in federating the republic of South Africa.
 - The British also at this time were more interested in Southern Rhodesia which they expected to have minerals.
 - The British feared to burden their tax payers with a colony that was poor.
 - There were a few British missionaries and traders in Botswana.
 - Generally, the British did not have enough colonial agents to attract them to Botswana.
 - The Botswana chiefs (except Khama III) were resistant to the establishment of colonial rule.
 - The country had a hot or poor climate. Therefore, the country did not enough rain and water.
 - It had poor soils that did not favour large scale farming.
 - Valuable minerals had not yet been discovered in the area to attract the British annexation.
 - Botswana was a large country and therefore Britain did not have enough manpower to occupy the country.
 - The small Boer republics of Goshen and Stella land near Botswana, made the country unattractive security wise to the British.
 - The above factors combined to stop the British from being interested in Botswana before 1885.
- ***HOW CHIEF KHAMA III RESPONDED TO THE SCRAMBLE FOR AFRICA***
- Chief Khama III belonged to the influential **Bamangwato** clan.
- He became Chief in 1875 on the eve of the European scramble for Africa.
- He ruled Bechuanaland until 1923.
- He was the greatest chief in Botswana in the 2nd half of the 19th Century.
- He grew up like any African child and was an expert in tribal war.

- He was an experienced warrior or fighter as a result of the many wars he fought with the Ndebele.
- He attended the Lutheran School in his county and converted to Christianity.
- He disobeyed his father and refused to marry a second wife.
- He was almost killed for disobeying his father.
- He banned the drinking of alcohol and witchcraft.
- He also built a school and church at his palace.
- His early contact with the missionaries and as admirer of the western culture made him a leading collaborator with British.
- The other Tswana chiefs resisted British colonialism.
- He also collaborated with the British because he did not want his county to be taken over by the Transvaal Boers.
- He also collaborated because he did not like the Germans in neighbouring Namibia to occupy his county.
- He had also resisted the BSA Co. under Cecil Rhodes
- Earlier in 1878, he had appealed to the British government to take over his county as a protectorate.
- He had also appealed to the British queen and parliament for protection which was not granted at this time.
- He however lost his land South of the Molopo River to the Cape.
- ***THE CAUSES OF UNREST IN BOTSWANA BETWEEN 1920 – 1960***
- The British occupation of Botswana did not usher in a period of peace. This was partly due to the fact the majority chiefs except Khama III did not welcome the British.
- The unrest in Botswana was caused by political, economic and to some extent social problems which included the following;
- The Tswana people opposed the colonial exploitation of their resources especially the British South African Company.
- There was unrest as a result of the whipping incident of 1933.
- A white youth was whipped for insulting an African girl by Chief Tshekedi who was a regent of Botswana Seretse Khama.
- The whipping incident almost led to war.
- Tshekedi was suspended from regency for two weeks.
- Another cause of unrest was marriage of Seretse Khama to Ruth Williams – a white woman.
- This was opposed by Tshekedi Khama, a regent and the two men were on bad terms for many years.
- The two men were deported from Botswana for some time.
- The unrest was also caused by the people of Botswana who opposed unfair representation in the LEGCo.
- The unrest was further caused by the British administrators who undermined the authority of African chiefs.
- The British also undermined the African cultures and values.

- The unrest was further caused by the preaching of British missionaries which was against African culture.
- The unrest was also caused by the increasing number of the African educated class nationalists.
- They forcefully demanded for the independence of Botswana
- The return of world war II veterans who also put pressure on the British to grant Botswana independence
- The marriage of TsereseKhama to white woman annoyed many Tswana and wanted him to be removed from office.
- Unrest was also caused by the refusal or opposition of many Tswana to being corporate in the Union of South Africa.
- The exiling and return of TshekelediKhama and SeretseKhama.
- When they returned, they resumed or embarked on their unstable relationship.
- The rise of political parties demanding for independence added to the confusion.
- The Conservative Bechuanaland Federal Party was formed in 1959.
- In 1960, the Bechuanaland People's Party was formed.
- The parties competed for power and conflicted.

• ***HOW BOTSWANA ACHIEVED INDEPENDENCE***

- The road to independence of Botswana begun in the 1920s when the British introduced some political reforms or changes.
- The British then allowed eight Tswana chiefs to rule their people.
- TshekediKhama became regent of Bamangwato (a major tribe) in 1926.
- Tshekedi conflict with the heir – SeretseKhama who married a white woman.
- The conflict brought instability and both were banned from living in Botswana by the British.
- In 1920, European and African advisory councils were formed and began to meet once or twice a year.
- In 1950, both councils formed a joint advisory council.
- The British High Commissioner however, remained with the powers to make laws.
- In 1956, Tshekedi and Seretse returned to Botswana to look for political changes.
- In 1961 advisory council was given powers to make and pass laws.
- The members of the council were to be elected.
- Around 1960, the formation of political parties started.
- In 1959, the first political party the **Bechauna Protectorate Federal Party** was formed.
- In the same year, the first constitution was made.
- The constitution recognised the legislative, executive and African councils.
- In 1962, Bechauna Protectorate Federal Party split and the Bechuanaland Democratic Party emerged led by SeretseKhama.
- The executive council was also replaced by a cabinet of ministers.
- In 1965, elections were held and the democratic party of SeretseKhama won 28 out of 31 seats.

- The Democratic Party formed the internal self-government in 1965 and Khama became Head of State.
- On **30th December 1966**, Botswana was granted full independence.